

ELEMENTARY

Persian  
Grammar

دستور  
زبان فارسی

L.P. Elwell-Sutton

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS



ELEMENTARY PERSIAN  
GRAMMAR



# ELEMENTARY PERSIAN GRAMMAR

BY  
L. P. ELWELL-SUTTON



CAMBRIDGE  
UNIVERSITY PRESS

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS  
Cambridge, New York, Melbourne, Madrid, Cape Town, Singapore,  
São Paulo, Delhi, Dubai, Tokyo, Mexico City

Cambridge University Press  
The Edinburgh Building, Cambridge CB2 8RU, UK

Published in the United States of America by  
Cambridge University Press, New York

[www.cambridge.org](http://www.cambridge.org)  
Information on this title: [www.cambridge.org/9780521092067](http://www.cambridge.org/9780521092067)

© Cambridge University Press 1963

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception  
and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements,  
no reproduction of any part may take place without the written  
permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 1963  
Reprinted with corrections and additions 1969  
Reprinted with key 1972 1975 1977 1983 1986 1989 1992 1996

*A catalogue record for this publication is available from the British Library*

ISBN 978-0-521-04894-1 Hardback  
ISBN 978-0-521-09206-7 Paperback

Cambridge University Press has no responsibility for the persistence or  
accuracy of URLs for external or third-party internet websites referred to in  
this publication, and does not guarantee that any content on such websites is,  
or will remain, accurate or appropriate. Information regarding prices, travel  
timetables, and other factual information given in this work is correct at  
the time of first printing but Cambridge University Press does not guarantee  
the accuracy of such information thereafter.

# CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION		<i>page ix</i>
LESSON		
I	The Alphabet	I
II	The Alphabet ( <i>cont.</i> ). Case and Gender. Simple Sentences	8
III	The Alphabet ( <i>cont.</i> ). Number	16
IV	The Alphabet ( <i>cont.</i> ). Writing Notes. Adjectives	29
V	The <i>Ezāfe</i> . Comparison of Adjectives. Hiatus	41
VI	Pronouns and Pronominal Adjectives	53
VII	The Verb: Simple Tenses. Verbal Sentences	65
VIII	Adverbs. Prepositions. Conjunctions	74
IX	The Verb: Compound Tenses. Uses of Tenses. Compound Verbs	87
X	Complex Sentences (Co-ordinate, Subordinate). Impersonal Verbs. Temporal Clauses	100
XI	Complex Sentences ( <i>cont.</i> ) (Relative Clauses)	110
XII	Complex Sentences ( <i>cont.</i> ) (Indefinite Relative. Other Conjunctions. Conditional Sentences)	123
XIII	Numerals. Time. Age. Dates	132
XIV	Persian Word Formation	144
XV	The Arabic Element in Persian	157
APPENDIX A	The <i>Nastaʿliq</i> Script	171
B	The <i>Šekaste</i> Script	176
C	Books for Further Study and Reading	185
VOCABULARY	Persian-English	187
	English-Persian	210
INDEX		221
KEY		<i>at end of volume</i>





## INTRODUCTION

The present work is a parallel volume to the author's *Colloquial Persian*, first published in 1941. Whereas the earlier grammar set out to introduce the student to the spoken language only, in this book the aim is to provide a simple but comprehensive framework for the current written language. It is not, however, purely literary in concept, since much modern writing in Persian—in newspapers, novels, short stories, etc.—if not actually colloquial, is decidedly freer in style than the traditional literary forms sanctioned by the classics and still favoured by more conservative writers.

Persian grammar is relatively simple, and the lessons that follow give the essence of all grammatical principles that will be encountered in the course of reading modern Persian books and newspapers. The lessons are also designed, without unduly complicating the student's task, to give him some impression of the characteristic idiom and phraseology of the current language.

The Persian script is introduced in the first lessons, and thereafter no transcription is used (except from time to time to illustrate phonetic points), so that the student is obliged from the start to read in the original script. While this may seem to make the early stages somewhat more laborious, it will be found that, once this initial hurdle has been passed, progress in reading is much more rapid than if, after first learning the language in transcription, the student then had to re-learn it in a different alphabet. It also eliminates the spelling difficulties that arise from the fact that certain sounds—s, z, t, etc.—are represented by more than one Persian letter. Vowelling is fairly complete in the early lessons, and is progressively discarded. All vowels are given in the vocabularies. The script used is the ordinary printed form, but for the benefit of those who wish to proceed further in the reading of letters and other modern manuscripts, appendices are provided on the two written scripts in common use at the present day.

While every effort has been made in the examples and exercises to choose words in common use and of value to the beginner, the selection has not been determined by any statistical examination of newspapers, books, etc. Such counts are often more misleading than helpful, as well as imposing an artificial strait-jacket on the form of the language to be taught. The purpose of the grammar is to familiarize the student with the structure of the language; vocabulary can only be acquired by use,

especially in reading, and by conversation where possible. In fact it will be seen that a total vocabulary of about 1,500 words has been used in the book, so that inevitably many useful words have been omitted; but few have been included that are not in common use.

From Lesson VII onwards the exercises take the form of continuous prose passages rather than disconnected sentences. The Persian-English exercises (from Lesson VIII onwards) are taken, with occasional minor modifications necessary to avoid the use of grammatical points not yet treated, from Persian originals; these have been selected for a fairly wide range of literary styles, as well as to illustrate various aspects of Persian life and literature. The English-Persian exercises from Lesson VIII onwards are designed as a 'potted' history of Persia, though emphasis is on linguistic rather than historical requirements.

Although the teaching of spoken Persian is not the primary aim of the present book, a reasonably good intonation and accent in reading is obviously desirable (and also helpful when listening to spoken literary Persian, for example, in radio broadcasts). To this end paragraphs on this point have been included at the end of most lessons, in the form of selections of example sentences already used in the lesson in question, printed in transcription with diacritical points showing approximately the pitch and stress of each syllable. While this is certainly inadequate to teach correct intonation, it will be found helpful in giving some idea of the rhythm of the language, which has a certain bearing on the grammatical and syntactical structure.

My grateful thanks are due to the Carnegie Trust for the Universities of Scotland for the financial assistance which made possible the publication of this book, and to the Syndics of the Cambridge University Press for their most helpful attitude. I would also like to acknowledge assistance given me by Mr P. W. Avery of the University of Cambridge and Mrs Katrina M. Ghafghaichi of Tehran.

# LESSON I

## The Alphabet

### 1. The Alphabet

The Persian alphabet, a slightly modified form of the Arabic, consists of thirty-two letters,<sup>1</sup> all primarily used as consonants. Four of these have secondary uses as vowels (see paras. 5, 6, 9 and 21), and there are also three *vowel signs* (see paras. 5, 6, 9) placed over or under the letter that precedes them (but normally omitted in writing or print).

### 2. The Script

The Persian script is written from right to left, and is cursive, that is to say, the letters of a word are normally joined to one another, even in the printed form.

A few (seven out of the thirty-two) do not join the *following* letter, thus leaving a gap in the word.

There are fifteen basic letter forms, the full number of thirty-two being made up by the use of one or more distinguishing dots over or under the letter and forming an integral part of it.

The shape of each basic form may be further modified by (a) a preceding joining stroke, and (except in the case of the seven 'non-joining' letters) (b) a following joining stroke, or (when no other letter follows) (c) a final tail or flourish.

### 3. The Nasx Script

There are three styles of writing with which the student will need to become familiar:

the printed style (*nasx*).<sup>2</sup>

the copy-book style (*nasta'liq*). (See Appendix A.)

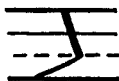
the handwritten style (*sekasté*). (See Appendix B.)

<sup>1</sup> For the alphabetical or 'dictionary' order, see para. 30.

<sup>2</sup> For the pronunciation of the sound represented in transcription by the letter 'x', see para. 8; for 'š' see para. 13.

The style to be studied initially is the *nasx*. The other two are derived from this.

All *nasx* letters are tilted slightly forward (in the direction of writing). Four imaginary lines of writing should be visualized, the lowest being the main line of writing, on which the whole of any letter should stand.



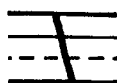
#### 4. Group I (One Letter)



Joined to preceding  
letter only



Separate form



Basic shape

This letter is not joined to a following letter.

Pronunciation	Joined form	Transcription	Name	Separate form
none	ل...	?	<i>alef</i>	ل

*Alef* stands for the glottal stop (very weak in Persian). It is assumed for the purposes of the Persian script that every word beginning with a vowel has an initial glottal stop, which is represented by *alef*. Thus the appearance of *alef* at the beginning of a word means in fact that it begins with one of the vowels. For dictionary purposes, all words beginning with *alef* are in the first group, regardless of the vowel.

#### 5. Group II (Six Letters)



Joined to  
preceding  
letter only



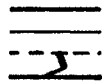
Joined to  
preceding  
and following  
letters



Joined to  
following  
letter only



Separate form



Basic shape

All letters in this group carry distinguishing dots.

Pronunciation	Transcription	Joined forms	Name	Separate form
as in English	b	ب...ب...ب	be	ب (1)
	p	پ...پ...پ	pe	پ (2)
	t	ت...ت...ت	te	ت (3)
	s	ث...ث...ث	se	ث (4)
	n	ن...ن...ن	nun	ن (5)
	y	ي...ي...ي	ye	ي (6)

The *final* and *separate* forms of *nun* differ from the standard.



The *separate* and *final* forms of *ye* differ from the standard, and are generally written without the two dots.



Letters preceding the final forms of *nun* and *ye* must be raised above the line in order to join at the correct point.

بی = b-y;      بن = b-n.

## 6. The Vowels

(i) a: slightly broader than the English vowel 'a' in 'cat'. This is represented by a short stroke . . . (fat-he or *zabar*) written over the

preceding letter. Thus a word beginning with the sound *a* . . . would in writing begin . . . **آ** ; *b-a* = **ب**, etc.

(ii) *α*: about halfway between 'a' in 'father' and 'a' in 'wash'. This is represented by the secondary use of *alef*. Thus **ا** . . . would indicate the sound of . . . *α*. A word beginning with the sound *α* . . . would require to be written . . . **اا** ; this is not considered very elegant, and so

the second *alef* is replaced by a long stroke written over the first, . . . **آ** (*madde*, not to be confused with the *fat-he* above). *b-a* = . . . **با**, etc.

## 7. The Vowels (cont.)

(iii) *e*: approximately 'e' as in 'net'. This is represented by a short stroke written below the preceding letter . . . **ـ** (*kasre* or *zir*). Thus a word beginning with the sound *e* . . . would in writing begin . . . **اـ**, *be* . . . would be written . . . **بـ**, etc.

(iv) *i*: approximately as 'ee' in 'sweet'. This is represented by the secondary use of *ye*, thus *i* . . . is written . . . **ايـ**, *bi* . . . as . . . **بيـ**, etc.

(v) *ei*: a diphthong similar to 'ai' in 'maid'. This is represented by *ye* preceded by the *fat-he*, thus *ei* . . . as . . . **ايـ**, *bei* . . . as . . . **بيـ**, etc.

*Note.* This combination only gives the diphthong when it is followed by a consonant or comes at the end of a word; followed by a vowel it

remains a *y* . . ., e.g. **بیت** verse—*beit*, **پی** track—*pei*; but

**بیان** explanation—*bayan*.

### 8. Group III (Four Letters)



Joined to  
preceding  
letter only



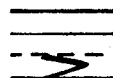
Joined to  
preceding  
and following  
letters



Joined to  
following  
letter only



Separate  
form



Basic  
shape

Letters preceding the last two forms above must be raised above the line, so as to join at the correct point.

نجا = نجا ; صح = صح

In the printed form the preceding join is usually made as follows:

صح... ...ج...

Pronunciation	Transcription	Joined forms	Name	Separate form
as in English	<i>j</i>	ج...ج...ج	<i>jim</i>	ج (1)
as in English 'church'	<i>c</i>	چ...چ...چ	<i>cin, ce</i>	چ (2)
as in English	<i>h</i>	ح...ح...ح	<i>he hotti</i> <sup>1</sup>	ح (3)

<sup>1</sup> See para. 89.

<i>Pronunciation</i>	<i>Transcription</i>	<i>Joined forms</i>	<i>Name</i>	<i>Separate form</i>
approximately as 'ch' $\times$ in Scottish 'loch' or Welsh 'bach' <sup>1</sup>	خ...خ...خ	$\times a$	خ	(4)

The position of the dots in the various forms should be carefully observed.

## 9. Stress

The stress in Persian falls generally on the last syllable of the word. Suffixes, however, are not stressed unless they are regarded as forming an integral part of the word (see, for example, para. 28 *b*). Exceptions to the general rule are noted in paras. 49, 63.

## VOCABULARY

with	با	without	بی
foot	پا	blue	آبی
until	تا	pocket	جیب
or	یا	twist, corner, screw	پیچ
water	آب	this	این
gate	باب	that	آن
papa	بابا	place	جا

<sup>1</sup> The use of the letter 'x' does not of course imply any resemblance to the sound of that letter in English.



here اینجا

fever تَب

there آنجا

between بَيْن

nose بینی

desert بیابان

Haji, pilgrim حاجی

soul, life جان

verse بَیت

bread نان

track پی

body تَن

see! ببین

explanation بَيَان

### EXERCISES

A. Write as one word (reading from right to left) and translate:

1. ج+ی+ب 2. پ+ی+چ
3. ب+ا+ب 4. ا+ی+ن+ج+ا
5. ب+ی+ن+ی 6. ح+ا+ج+ی
7. ب+ی+ت 8. ا+ا+ب
9. ب+ب+ی+ن

B. Write as separate letters and translate:

1. آنجا 2. این 3. بابا  
4. آبی 5. بین 6. تب  
7. بین 8. بیابان

C. Read and translate:

1. این جیب 2. آن بیابان 3. با آب  
4. آب یا بیابان 5. بی جان 6. بی نان  
7. تن یا جان 8. پا یا بینی

## LESSON II

### The Alphabet (*continued*). Case and Gender. Simple Sentences

#### 10. Group IV (Two Letters)

Joined to preceding  
letter only

Separate form

Basic shape

These letters are not joined to a following letter.

Pronunciation	Transcription	Joined form	Name	Separate form
as in English	d	د...	dal	د (1)
as in English	ḏ	ذ...	ḏal	ذ (2)

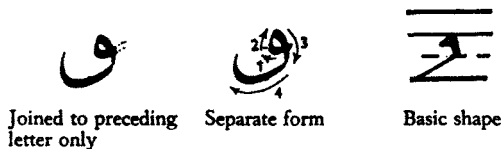
**11. Group V (Three Letters)**

These letters are not joined to a following letter.

Pronunciation	Transcription	Joined Form	Name	Separate form
trilled with the tip of the tongue	<i>r</i>	ر...	<i>re</i>	ر (1)
as in English	<i>z</i>	ز...	<i>zein</i>	ز (2)
as 's' in 'pleasure'	<i>ẓ</i>	ژ...	<i>ẓe</i>	ژ (3)

The letter 'r' must always be sounded, e.g. *barf* (snow, not *bāf*).

Compare also:

**11a. Group VI (One Letter)**

This letter is not joined to a following letter.

Pronunciation	Transcription	Joined form	Name	Separate form
as English 'v' with tendency towards 'w'	<i>v</i>	و...	<i>vav</i>	و (1)

Note that Group IV letters join on the level of the main line of writing, whereas Groups V and VI join on the secondary line, requiring that preceding letters be raised.

بد but بر جو

## 12. The Vowels (*cont.*)

(vi) o: A somewhat rounded version of 'u' as in 'put'. This is represented by the sign ...<sup>ُ</sup> (*ṣamme* or *piṣ*) written above the preceding letter.

Thus o ... is written ...أ, do ... as ...د, zo ... as

...ز<sup>ُ</sup>, etc.

(vii) u: 'oo' as in 'root'. This is represented by the secondary use of *vav*. Thus u ... is written as ...او, ju ... as ...جو,

xu ... as ...خو, etc.

(viii) ou: approximately as 'ow' in 'bowl'. This is represented by *vav* preceded by the vowel sign *fat-he*, thus dou ... دو,

rou ... رَو

*Note.* This combination only gives the diphthong when it is followed by a consonant or comes at the end of a word; followed by a vowel it remains av ..., e.g. نَو (new) = *nou*; نَوْرُوز (new year,

lit. new day = *nouruz*), but جَوَاب (answer) = *javab*.

## 13. Group VII (Two Letters)

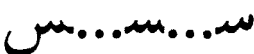
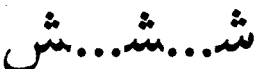
Joined to  
preceding  
letter only

Joined to  
preceding  
and following  
letters





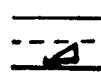
Joined to  
following  
letters only


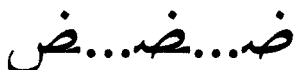
Separate form

Basic shape




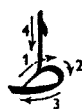
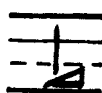
Pronunciation	Transcription	Joined forms	Name	Separate form
as in English	s		sin	س (1)
as in English 'ship'	ʃ		shin	ش (2)


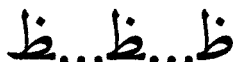
## 14. Group VIII (Two Letters)

				
Joined to preceding letter only	Joined to preceding and following letters	Joined to following letter only	Separate form	Basic shape

Pronunciation	Transcription	Joined forms	Name	Separate form
as in English	s		sad	ص (1)
as in English	z		zād	ض (2)

## 15. Group IX (Two Letters)

				
Joined to preceding letter only	Joined to preceding and following letters	Joined to following letter only	Separate form	Basic shape

Pronunciation	Transcription	Joined forms	Name	Separate form
as in English	t		ta	ط (1)
as in English	z		za	ظ (2)

## 16. Case

There are no case inflections in Persian.

## 17. Gender

There is no distinction of gender, words which are naturally feminine being treated for grammatical purposes exactly as other nouns, e.g.

دُختر daughter, girl.

## 18. Sentence Structure

The normal sentence order is: Subject, Predicate, Verb.

حَسَن حَاضِرِ اَسْتُ Hasan is ready.

There is no definite article. The *a* of اَسْتُ, 'is' is usually elided after a word ending in a vowel. This is sometimes also indicated in writing by the omission of the *alef*.

دُختر زیباست the girl is beautiful.

*Alef* may also be omitted after a consonant, and the سْتُ written joined to the word, e.g.

سیب شیرینست the apple is sweet.

Although separate pronouns exist (see para. 40), they need not be used as the subject of a verb.

حَاضِرِ اَسْتُ he is ready.

راضیست، راضی اَسْتُ she is pleased.

The intonation pattern of a simple sentence of this kind is a rise followed by a fall (in the following examples, and throughout the book, the horizontal strokes indicate pitch, and the vertical strokes stress). The verb *ast* is not stressed unless it is contracted with a previous word ending in a vowel (see above).

$\overset{-}{\text{hasan}}$    $\overset{-}{\text{haz}}\overset{-}{\text{er}}\overset{-}{\text{ast}}$	$\overset{-}{\text{in}}\overset{-}{\text{xabar}}$    $\overset{-}{\text{sah}}\overset{+}{\text{i}}\overset{-}{\text{hast}}$
$\overset{-}{\text{doxtar}}$    $\overset{-}{\text{zib}}\overset{+}{\text{ast}}$	$\overset{-}{\text{baradar}}$    $\overset{-}{\text{javan}}\overset{+}{\text{ast}}$

### EXERCISES

A. Read aloud and translate into English:

۱ بانو زیباست

۲ باد تند است

۳ این خبر صحیح است

۴ نخیر، صحیح نیست

۵ پدر خوب است

۶ آن سیب شیرین است

۷ نخیر، این سیب ترش است

۸ در سبز است

۹ شب سرد است

- زَن حاضِر است 10.  
 بَرادَر جَوان است 11.  
 اُستاد راضیست 12.

B. Translate into Persian:

1. The girl is young. 2. The answer is not correct. 3. This apple is red. 4. That boy is Hasan. 5. Gold is yellow. 6. The door is open. 7. That apple is sour. 8. Hosein is not ready. 9. This lesson is difficult. 10. Reza is not pleased. 11. The boy is ready. 12. It is well (good).

VOCABULARY

answer	جَوَاب	lady	بانو
ready, present	حاضِر	wind	باد
(he, she, it) is	اُست	swift	تُند
daughter, girl	دُختر	news	خَبَر
beautiful	زیبا	true, correct	صَحیح
apple	سینب	no	نَخیر، خیر
sweet	شیرین	is not	نیست
pleased, content	راضی	father	پِدَر



good خوب

sour, bitter ترش

door در

green سبز

night شب

cold سرد

woman زن

brother برادر

young جوان

master, teacher استاد

red سرخ

son, boy پسر

Hasan حسن

gold زر

yellow زرد

open باز

Hosein حسین

lesson درس

difficult سخت

Reza رضا

## LESSON III

The Alphabet (*continued*). Number

## 19. Group X (Two Letters)



Joined to  
preceding  
letter only



Joined to  
preceding  
and following  
letters



Joined to  
following  
letter only



Separate form



Basic shape

Pronunciation	Transcription	Joined forms	Name	Separate form
not sounded	ʔ	ع...ع...ع	<i>ein</i>	ع (1)
voiced equivalent of <i>x</i> ; similar to 'r' in French 'mer' or 'g' in German 'Wagen'	q	ع...ع...ع	<i>qein</i>	ع (2)

For further notes on the use of *ein* see para. 26.

## 20. Group XI (Two Letters)



Joined to  
preceding  
letter only



Joined to  
preceding  
and following  
letters



Joined to  
following  
letter only



Separate form



Basic shape

Pronunciation	Transcription	Joined forms	Name	Separate form
as in English	f	ف...ف...ف	<i>fe</i>	ف (1)
as in Group X	q	ق...ق...ق	<i>qaf</i>	ق (2)

The separate and final forms of *qaf* differ from the standard:



## 21. Group XII (Two Letters)



Joined to  
preceding  
letter only



Joined to  
preceding  
and following  
letters



Joined to  
following  
letter only




Separate form



Basic shape

Pronunciation	Transcription	Joined forms	Name	Separate form
as in English <sup>1</sup>	k	ک...ک...ک	kaf	ک (1)
as in English <sup>1</sup> 'garden'	g	گ...گ...گ	gaf	گ (2)

The two final forms of *kaf* are often written (and always printed) with a small sign  in the centre of the letter instead of the overhead stroke.



This sign may also be inserted in the *gaf*, but in this case the overhead strokes are retained. The second stroke of the *gaf* is sometimes replaced by three dots.



<sup>1</sup>Before the 'front' vowels (a, e, i, ei) and at the end of a word, these sounds become palatalized, the effect being somewhat as though a brief 'y' sound were inserted between the consonant and its following vowel, e.g.

کتاب book, *k'etab*.

**22. Group XIII (One Letter)**

Joined to  
preceding  
letter only



Joined to  
preceding  
and following  
letters



Joined to  
following  
letter only



Separate form



Basic shape

*Note the level of the join preceding the final form.*

Pronunciation	Transcription	Joined forms	Name	Separate form
as in English	<i>l</i>		<i>lam</i>	(I)

This sound must always be pronounced clearly, as in 'leaf', even when it falls at the end of a word. The English tendency to swallow it ('hall, bowl, real') must be avoided.

**23. Group XIV (One Letter)**

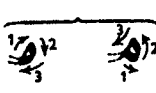
Joined to  
preceding  
letter only

alternative



Joined to  
preceding  
and following  
letters

alternative



Joined to  
following  
letter only



Separate form



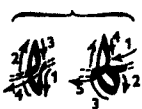
Basic shape

Pronunciation	Transcription	Joined forms	Name	Separate form
as in English	<i>m</i>		<i>mim</i>	(I)

**24. Group XV (One Letter)**

Joined to  
preceding  
letter only

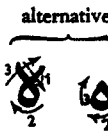
alternative



Joined to  
preceding  
and following  
letters



Joined to  
following  
letter only



Separate form



Basic shape

Pronunciation	Transcription	Joined forms	Name	Separate form
as in English	<i>h</i>	ه...ح...ف...ه	<i>he harveẓ</i> <sup>1</sup>	ه (1)

This letter must always be sounded, e.g. شَهر, town, *ṣahr*.

*Secondary use of he.* The final vowel of words that end in vowels must always be represented by a *letter*, even when elsewhere it would be represented by one of the *vowel signs*.

In the case of *a, i, u, ei, ou* no problem arises, since these are already represented by letters (ا و ی). Of the three remaining vowels, *a, e, o*, the sounds *a* and *o* are only found at the end of words in one or two isolated cases. The sound *e* in this position is represented by *he*.

خانه house, *xane*.

The final sound *a* is also represented by *he* in one word:

نه (not, no!), *na*.

The final sound *o* is represented by *va* in two words:

تو (thou), *to*.

دو (two), *do*.

It is important to note that, since *he* in this particular use is not a consonant but a symbol representing a final vowel, it may only be so used at the end of a word, and may not be joined to a following letter, e.g. to the first letter of a suffix. When a suffix has to be added to a word ending in

<sup>1</sup> See para. 89.

4...., two alternatives are possible; either the *he* is dropped and the vowel written in the usual way, or the suffix is written separately, e.g.

houses خانها or خانهها (see para. 28 b).

The second alternative is preferred, as being less ambiguous. These rules do not of course apply to *he* in its normal use as a consonant.

## 25. Writing Signs

A doubled letter is only written once, the doubling being indicated by the sign . . . " (*tašdid* or *šadde*) written over the letter. This sign is usually omitted in print and writing.

بچه child, *bacce*.

Doubled consonants must always be pronounced doubled; cf. English 'book-case'.

When necessary to avoid ambiguity, a consonant that does not carry a following vowel may be marked with the sign . . . ° (*sokun* or *jaʒm*).

دست hand, *dast*.

## 26. The Glottal Stop

Reference has already been made (para. 4) to the use of *alef* to represent a theoretical glottal stop at the beginning of a word. In fact the sound is really represented by the sign ء (*hamze*) written over the *alef*, but generally omitted. This sound may also be found in the middle of a word and (rarely) at the end; in such cases the *hamze* is generally written over a *ye* without dots (occasionally also over *alef* or *vav*).

In certain cases (see para. 39) it may also be written over final *he*, when this represents the vowel sound . . . *e*.

پائین below, down, *paʔin*.

مَسْئُول responsible, *masʔul*.

مُؤْمِن believer, *moʔmen*.

مَأْمُور official, *maʔmur*.

The glottal stop, whether represented by *hamze* or by *ein* (see para. 19) is very weak in Persian. Between two vowels it is little more than a glide from one to the other. Between a consonant and a vowel it indicates a slight hesitation, between a vowel and a consonant a slight slurring of the vowel. When it follows a consonant at the end of a word, it has the effect of lengthening the preceding syllable without changing the quality of the vowel (this effect occurs in any word ending in two consonants).

رُبْع quarter, *ro:bʔ*.

cf. سَخْت difficult, *sa:xt*.

It may be noted that no Persian word can begin with two consonants. When foreign words of this type are incorporated into the language, a vowel is usually inserted, e.g.

اِسْتُودِيُو studio, *estudyu*.

فِرَانْسِه France, *feranse*.

## 27. The Silent *vav*

The letter *xa* at the beginning of a word is frequently followed by a silent *vav*. This *vav* has no phonetic or other value, and the word must be read as though it were not there.

خَواَهَر sister, *xahar*; but contrast: خُون blood, *xun*.

خواب sleep, *xab* but: خوب good, *xub*.

خود self, *xod*.

خویش self, *xis*.

## 28. Number

(a) There is no article, either definite or indefinite.

Indefiniteness, in the sense of a single unspecified unit of a general class, is indicated by the suffix *...i*

کتاب book, the book. کتابی a book .

This suffix is not an integral part of the word, and is therefore not stressed. It may qualify more than one word, e.g.

کتاب و قلمی a book and a pen.

یک (usually pronounced *yek*) 'one' (see para. 88) is often used in the sense of 'a, an' either in place of or together with the indefinite suffix.

یک کتابی، یک کتاب a book.

(b) The normal plural ending is *...ha*

کتابها books, the books.



Rational beings, and certain other nouns, may alternatively take the plural ending **ان...**

**زَنَها** or **زَنان** women.

This usage is commoner in the written than in the spoken language.

Both these suffixes are regarded as an integral part of the word, and therefore take the final syllable stress (see para. 9).

A few words have special plural endings, e.g.

**مَرَد** man.

**مَرَدِها** or **مَرَدان** men (as opposed to 'women').

**مَرَدُم** people.

With the exception of rational beings, plural nouns take a singular verb. Adjectives (see also Lesson V), including demonstrative adjectives (see para. 43), qualifying plural nouns of any class remain in the singular, but when used as nouns or pronouns they take the plural endings, e.g.

**بِزُرگان** great men.

**آنها، آنان** those (men, things, etc.).

But

**این مَرَدُم** these people.

*Note.* (i) Words of Arabic origin may frequently be found with one of the Arabic plural endings

**ات...** or **ین...**

مأمور	official.	مأمورین	officials.
دستور	instruction.	دستورات	instructions.

(ii) Many words of Arabic origin form the Arabic 'broken' plural, which consists in an internal change in the form of the word (see para. 105).

کتاب	book.	کُتُب	books.
سِرّ	secret.	أسرار	secrets.
شرط	condition.	شَرَایط	conditions.

The Persian plural endings **ان...ها** or **ها...ان** may generally be used in place of these Arabic forms.

(c) In addition to the *Indefinite*, *Definite* and *Plural* uses of the noun, a *General* use is also possible, in which neither indefinite nor plural ending is used (see also para. 54. The General use is normally limited to the complement or object of a verb).

این چیز کتابی است	this thing is a book (Indef.).
کتاب آنجاست	the book is there (Def.).
کتابها آنجاست	the books are there (Plural Def.).
اینها کتاب است	these are books (General).

این مرد کارگیر است      this man is a workman  
(General).

این مردم کارگیر آند      these men are workmen  
(General).

### 29. Questions

No change of order is required to express a question. In speech the interrogative sense is indicated by the intonation; in the written style, when there is no interrogative word such as 'what?', 'why?', 'where',

etc., the question may be introduced by the particle آیا, e.g.

آیا حسن حاضر است؟      Is Hasan ready?

آیا دختر زیباست؟      Is the girl beautiful?

Another similar particle, مگر, has a contradictory sense, expecting

the answer 'no' to a question in the positive form, and 'yes' to a question in the negative form, e.g.

مگر دختر زیباست؟

Is the girl [really] beautiful? (Surely she isn't.)

مگر حسن حاضر نیست؟

Isn't Hasan ready [yet]? (Surely he is . . .)

The intonation pattern in questions follows a generally rising line:

-   ^   -   ^		-   ^   -
(aya) hasan		hazer ast
-   ^   -   ^		-   ^
(aya) doxtar		zibast

The pattern is slightly different for the contradictory type of question.

- - - ^	- ^
<i>magar doxtar</i>	<i>zibast</i>
- - - ^	- - ^
<i>magar hasan</i>	<i>hazer nist</i>

### EXERCISES

A. Translate into English:

1. این پسر و آن دختر خوب اند
2. اصفهان شهری است
3. این خانه بزرگ است
4. قاشق و چنگال و کارد  
حاضر است
5. حسین پسر است و پروین  
دختر
6. آیا این شرایط سخت نیست؟
7. بلی، این شرایط سخت است
8. راه دراز است

9. این وَطَنَ عَزِیز است  
 10. مَکَرِ اینجا آب نیست؟  
 11. نَخَیر اینجا آب نیست  
 12. این پِسر بُلند است و، آن  
 دُختر کوتاه

B. Translate into Persian:

1. These books are green. 2. Sleep is comfortable. 3. Persia is a country. 4. That child is small. 5. This knife is sharp. 6. That town is large. 7. The painter is ready. 8. The apple is red but the tree is green. 9. That book is wonderful and strange. 10. The mother is dear. 11. Is that house comfortable? 12. These instructions are easy.

VOCABULARY

and وَ

fork چَنگال

(they) are آند

knife کارد

town شَهر

Parvin پروین  
(female name)

house خانه

road (consonantal *he*) راه

spoon قاشق

long (distance) دَراز

fatherland وَطَن

big, large بزرگ

Isfahan اصفهان

dear عزیز

long, tall بلند

short کوتاه

comfortable راحت

Iran, Persia ایران

country مملکت

child بچه

sleep خواب

book کتاب

condition

شَرَط (شرایط pl.)

yes بلی

small کوچک

sharp تیز

painter نقاش

but ولی

tree درخت

wonderful عجیب

strange غریب

mother مادر

instruction دستور

(دستورات pl.)

easy آسان

## LESSON IV

The Alphabet (*continued*) Writing Notes. Adjectives

## 30. The Complete Alphabet

<sup>1</sup> ا..... — —	ا ʾ <i>alef</i>
ب.....ب.....ب	ب b <i>be</i>
پ.....پ.....پ	پ p <i>pe</i>
ت.....ت.....ت	ت t <i>te</i> .
ث.....ث.....ث	ث s <i>se</i>
ج.....ج.....ج	ج j <i>jim</i>
چ.....چ.....چ	چ c <i>cin</i>
ح.....ح.....ح	ح h <i>he hotti</i>
خ.....خ.....خ	خ x <i>xa</i>
<sup>1</sup> د.... — —	د d <i>dal</i>
<sup>1</sup> ذ.... — —	ذ z <i>zal</i>
<sup>1</sup> ر.... — —	ر r <i>re</i>
<sup>1</sup> ز.... — —	ز z <i>zein</i>
<sup>1</sup> ژ.... — —	ژ ž <i>že</i>
س.....س.....س	س s <i>sin</i>

<sup>1</sup> These letters do not join a following letter.

ش.....ش.....ش	ش š <i>šin</i>
ص.....ص.....ص	ص s <i>sad</i>
ض.....ض.....ض	ض z <i>zad</i>
ط.....ط.....ط	ط t <i>ta</i>
ظ.....ظ.....ظ	ظ z <i>za</i>
ع.....ع.....ع	ع ʔ <i>ein</i>
غ.....غ.....غ	غ q <i>qein</i>
ف.....ف.....ف	ف f <i>fe</i>
ق.....ق.....ق	ق q <i>qaf</i>
ك.....ك.....ك	ك k <i>kaf</i>
گ.....گ.....گ	گ g <i>gaf</i>
ل.....ل.....ل	ل l <i>lam</i>
م.....م.....م	م m <i>mim</i>
ن.....ن.....ن	ن n <i>nun</i>
<sup>1</sup> و..... — —	و v <i>vav</i>
ه.....ه.....ه	ه h <i>he</i> <i>havveṣ</i>
ی.....ی.....ی	ی y <i>ye</i>

<sup>1</sup>These letters do not join a following letter.



The above is the alphabetical or dictionary order. For the numerical order and values of the letters see para. 89.

### 31. Summary of Consonants and Vowels

#### Consonants

##### (a) Phonetic

k ک	c چ	p پ
g گ	j ج	b ب
x خ	š ش	f ف
q ق غ	ž ژ	v و
t ط ت	m م	h ه ح
d د	n ن	ʔ ع ..
s ص س ث	r ر	y ی
z ظ ض ز ذ	l ل	

The duplication of sounds in the above list is due to the fact that certain letters (ق ع ظ ط ض ص ح ث) are found for the most part only in words of Arabic origin, in which language they have distinctive sounds. While in Persian the original spelling has been retained, the difficult Arabic sounds have been converted into sounds more acceptable to, and already existing in, Persian speech. The same applies to the letter ذ, though this is also found in a number of Persian words, and formerly stood for the sound 'th' as in 'this', no longer used in Persian.

## (b) Writing

ا	ح درس ص ط ع	ک ل م و ه	No dots
ب	ج		One dot under
ن	خ ذ ز	ض ظ غ ف	One dot over
ی			Two dots under
ت		ق	Two dots over
پ	چ		Three dots under
ث	ژ ش	ث	Three dots over
		گ	Stroke over

## Vowels

End	Middle	Initial
does not occur (except in نَه written	...	...آ a
ا... as ... e)	...	...آ a
ا...	...ا...	...آ a
ا...	...	...ا e
ا...	...ا...	...ای ei
ا...	...ا...	...ای i

End	Middle	Initial	
only occurs in تو and دو, written	...	أ...	o
و... as ... u			
و...	...و...	أو...	ou
و...	...و...	أو...	u

### 32. Summary of Writing Signs

used with following <i>ye</i> for <i>ei</i> , with <i>vav</i> for <i>ou</i> (may also be found with <i>alef</i> for <i>a</i> , and with final <i>he</i> for final <i>e</i> ).	a	<i>fathe, zabar</i>	...
(may be found with <i>ye</i> for <i>i</i> , and with final <i>he</i> for final <i>e</i> ).	e	<i>kasre, zir</i>	...
(may be found with <i>vav</i> for <i>u</i> ).	o	<i>zamme, piš</i>	...
used over <i>alef</i> for initial <i>a</i> .	ā	<i>madde</i>	...
used over <i>alef, vav, ye</i> (without dots), or without supporter, to represent glottal stop.	ʔ	<i>hamze</i>	...
indicates that there is no vowel immediately following.	—	<i>sokun, jazm</i>	...
sign of doubling.	—	<i>šadde, tašdid</i>	...

Certain other writing signs will be mentioned in due course (see paras. 57, 108).

### 33. Punctuation

Older Persian books and manuscripts use little or no punctuation. Modern printed books use any or all of the following, but their employment is not yet standardized.


full stop	.
colon	:
semi-colon	;
comma	,
dash	—
exclamation mark	!
question mark	?
quotation marks	((      )) or (      )

Quotation marks are often omitted.

### 34. Handwriting Notes

(i) The following combinations of letters are used to avoid inelegant forms

(a) *lam* followed by *alef*.

This is used to avoid the form . The following variants are found.



Joined form

لا...

Separate form

لا

In some old grammar books this combined form is listed as a separate letter. It must always be used, the first variant being the commonest.

(b) *kaf* or *gaf* followed by *alef* or *lam*.

$$\text{كا} = \text{ا...} + \text{...ك}$$

$$\text{كا...} = \text{ا...} + \text{...ك...}$$

$$\text{كل} = \text{ل...} + \text{...ك}$$

$$\text{...كل} = \text{...ل...} + \text{...ك}$$

$$\text{كل...} = \text{ل...} + \text{...ك...}$$

$$\text{كلا} = \text{ا...} + \text{...ل...} + \text{...ك}$$

(c) Where several letters of Group II occur in succession it is usual to vary the height of alternate letters so as to avoid confusion.

تَنْبَل or تَنْبَل lazy.

(ii) It has already been pointed out that the *preceding* point of joining for a number of letter forms

ع... و... ل... ق... ص... س... ي... ن... ر...

falls on one of the secondary lines above the main line of writing whereas the *following* point of joining or the base of a final letter is invariably on the main line. To overcome this difficulty, the letter preceding one of these forms may be modified, or alternatively the whole of the initial part of the word may be raised above the line. These rules are not always observed in printed type and typewriter lettering, where modifications are introduced into the joined forms of certain letters.

(a) letters followed by Group V:

$$\text{ر...} = \text{ر...} + \text{...ه...}$$

$$\text{سر...} = \text{سر...} + \text{...س...} \text{ or } \text{...س}$$

$$\text{صر...} = \text{صر...} + \text{...ص...} \text{ or } \text{...ص}$$

All other letters prefixed to Group V must be raised above the line.

(b) letters followed by final *nun*:

$$\text{ن...} = \text{ن...} + \text{...ه...}$$

$$\text{سن...} = \text{سن...} + \text{...س...}$$

$$\text{صن...} = \text{صن...} + \text{...ص...}$$

All other letters prefixed to final *nun* must be raised above the line.

(c) Letters preceding final *ye*:

$$\text{عی...} = \text{عی...} + \text{...ی...}$$

$$\text{کی...} = \text{کی...} + \text{...ی...}$$

$$\text{لی...} = \text{لی...} + \text{...ی...}$$

$$\text{فی...} = \text{فی...} + \text{...ی...}$$

$$\text{می...} = \text{می...} + \text{...ی...}$$

$$\text{نی...} = \text{نی...} + \text{...ی...}$$

$$\text{هی...} = \text{هی...} + \text{...ی...}$$

$$\text{سی...} = \text{سی...} + \text{...ی...}$$

ص... ص... ص...+...= صی، صی... صی

ح... ح...+...= حی

ط... ط...+...= طی، طی... طی

It will have been noticed that the *preceding* letter forms that undergo the most marked modification are:

ص... ص... ص... ص... ص... ص... ص... ص... ص... ص...

In other cases it is rather the relative position of the letters that is important.

Great care must be taken to avoid duplication of the elements in these combined forms, for instance, ...ص followed by ...ی must be written صی, and not صی, which would be read as though a letter of Group II with the dots missing were inserted in the middle.

(d) The following letter forms have the effect of raising the whole of the preceding part of the word above the line, without other modification:

final ع...، و...، ل...، ق...، ص...، س...، س...

(e) Similar effects arise from the use of the handwritten forms of the letters in Groups III, XIV and XV, but these are not usually found in the printed form. Examples are:

Printed: ح...، ن...، ن...، ک...، ن...

Handwritten: ص ص ص ح ل

In printed texts the rules of calligraphy are not always carefully observed, but they are worth cultivating in handwriting, since they enter largely into the shape and style of the two handwritten scripts, *nasta'liq* and *sekaste*, in which most manuscripts and letters (modern as well as mediaeval) are written.

### 35. Adjectives

Adjectives may be intensified by a preceding adverb,  
as **خیلی** or **بسیار**, 'very', e.g. very big **خیلی بزرگ**;  
very good **بسیار خوب**.

These words may also be used as adjectives in the sense of 'much', 'many'.

**است**, 'is', is used when a complement or attribute is expressed.

**دَر سَبَز است** the door is green.

**این عِمَارَت پُستَخانه است** this building is the post-office.

**هست**, 'there is, exists', is used when there is no complement.

**اینجا مَغازه هست** there are shops here.

### EXERCISES

A. Translate into English:

1. این مَنَزِل بسیار کوچک است ولی زیباست
2. این اُطاق خیلی کوچک نیست
3. این زَمین است و آن سَقَف است
4. زَمین پائین است و سَقَف بالا
5. این دیوار بُلند است
6. اینجا پَنجره هست و آنجا دَر



7. آیا آنجا باغی هست؟  
 8. بلی خیلی نزدیک است  
 9. این باغ سبز است  
 10. این گُل سُرُخ است ولی آن گُلها زرد است  
 11. آب لازم است ولی اینجا خَراب است  
 12. این خیابان خیلی پهن است ولی آن کوچه تنگ است  
 13. بلی آقا خیابان بسیار زیباست  
 14. این مغازه بسیار مفید است

B. Translate into Persian:

1. Is the bazaar far? 2. No sir, it is not far, it is near. 3. This bazaar is very beautiful. 4. There is fruit here. 5. Is this fruit fresh? 6. Yes sir, it is very fresh. 7. Is not this meat very expensive? 8. No madam, it is very cheap. 9. Is there [a] bank here?<sup>1</sup> 10. Yes sir, there is; it is there. 11. Is the manager here (present)? 12. Here is [a] table and chair and paper and pen and ink. 13. Is this building the post office? 14. No sir, it is there, but it is not open.

VOCABULARY

house	مَنْزِل	much, many, very	خیلی
much, many, very	بسیار	ground, floor	زَمین
room	اُطاق	below	پائین

<sup>1</sup>Square brackets [ ] indicate words found in English, but omitted in Persian; round brackets ( ) indicate words required in Persian, whether additional or as alternatives.

ceiling سَقَف

above بالا

wall دیوار

window پَنجرَه

there is هست

garden باغ

flower, rose گل

necessary لازم

bad (things) خَراب

street خیابان

wide پهن

side-street کوچه

narrow تنگ

shop مَغازه

useful مفید

bazaar بازار

far دور

sir, Mr آقا

near نَزْدِیک

fruit میوه

fresh, new تازه

meat گوشت

expensive گِران

madam, Mrs, lady خانم

cheap ارزان

bank بانک

manager رَئِیس

table میز

chair صَدَدَلِی

paper, letter کاغذ

pen قَلَم

ink جَوَهر

building عِمَارَت

post-office پُستخانه

## LESSON V

## The Ezafe. Comparison of Adjectives. Hiatus

## 36. The Ezafe

(a) A second qualifying word (noun or adjective) may be linked to any noun by the *ezafe* construction, which consists in the insertion of the particle ... (*e*) between the two words. The qualifying word always comes second. The *ezafe* is an enclitic, that is to say, it is in the nature of an *unstressed* suffix to the preceding word. The following are among the commoner uses of this construction. (For another use see para. 58.)

## (i) Possessive

*Noun:*      کِتَابِ بَچَهِ      the child's book.

                 پِسرِ رِضا      Reza's son.

                 حُسَینِ رِضا      Hosein [son] of Reza.

                 دیوارِ خانِه      the wall of the house.

## (ii) Descriptive

*Adjective:*      مَترِ بَزرُگ      the big house.

                 دَرِ سَبز      the green door.

                 پِسرِ جَوَان      the young boy.

*Noun:*      حُسَینِ نَقاش      Hosein the painter.

                 راهِ اِصفَهان      the road to Isfahan.

پیرِ مَرَد	old man (lit. 'man veteran').
پیرِ زَن	old woman (lit. 'woman veteran').
خانمِ قرهاد	Mrs Farhad.

## (iii) Partitive

Noun:	اکثریتِ زَنان	the majority of the women.
	تمامِ مَرَدُم	all of the people.

Similar to this is the Superlative construction (see para. 386).

(b) The *ezafe* is used purely as a linking particle, and cannot appear except between a noun or nominal expression and an *immediately following* qualifying word or expression. However, several nouns and/or adjectives may be linked together:

دُخترِ بزرگِ احمد	Ahmad's eldest (lit. big) daughter.
پسرِ جوانِ پیرِ زن	the young son of the old woman.
رئیسِ کلِ بانکِ ملیِ ایران	the general manager of the National Bank of Iran.

Furthermore, any item in the chain may consist of more than one word (in which case the *ezafe* comes only between the two groups):

پسرِ آن مَرَد	the son of <i>that man</i> .
پدر و مادرِ آن پسر	the father and mother of <i>that boy</i> .
دُخترِ جوانِ و زیبا	the <i>young and beautiful</i> girl.

The last phrase could also be written

دُخترِ جوانِ زیبا	the young, beautiful girl
-------------------	---------------------------

without significant change of meaning.

Where several words or expressions are to be linked in this way, *descriptives* take precedence over *possessives* and *partitives*:

اَكْثَرِيَّتِ بَزُرْگِ زَنانِ جَوانِ تِهْرانِ

the great majority of the young women of Tehran.

(c) The plural suffix is added to the noun in the usual way, but not to the qualifying adjective, which does not undergo any change (see para. 28; for the suffix ها see para. 39A (iii) (a)).

زَنانِ زيبا the beautiful women.

کُتُبِ مُفید useful books.

Other suffixes, which do not form an integral part of the word, are added at the end of the complete group. Thus the 'indefinite' *ye* is used as follows in this construction:

مَنْزِلِ بَزُرْگِ a big house.

دَرِ سَبْزِ a green door.

پِسرِ جَوانِ a young boy.

In an alternative construction the *ye* may be suffixed to the principal noun, in which case the qualifying word follows *without exafe*.

مَنْزِلِی بَزُرْگِ a big house.

دَرِی سَبْزِ a green door.

پِسرِی جَوانِ a young boy.

This construction may also be applied to partitives:

جَوالِ سَنگِینِی سِيبِ دُرُشت a heavy sack of large apples.

With this type of construction the verb in a sentence may often be inserted between the noun and the adjective:

حَسَن پسرِ است جوان Hasan is a young boy.

(d) A principal noun already referred to may, instead of being repeated, be replaced by the word مال ('property'), or از آن (lit. 'from (preposition, see para. 59) that') linked to the qualifying noun by *ezafe* in the usual way.

آن کتاب مالِ حَسَن است that book is Hasan's  
(lit. 'the property of Hasan').

این منزل از آنِ رضا است this house is Reza's  
(lit. 'from that of Reza').

### 37. Other Qualifying Words

In a certain number of cases the qualifying word precedes the principal noun, in which case no *ezafe* particle is used. Among these are:

(a) the demonstrative adjectives این and آن, and compounds derived from these (see para. 43).

(b) Adjectives of number and quantity (including numerals) followed by the noun in the *singular* (see paras. 45, 88).

(c) Superlative adjectives, and adjectives of similar formation (see para. 38).

(d) Certain common adjectives, e.g.

خوب مرد good man.

خوب مردی a good man.

خوش پسر good boy.

The ordinary *ezafe* construction is also commonly used.

(e) Certain types of compound noun (see also para. 98). These are usually written as one word.

خوابگاه 'sleep-place', i.e. 'bedroom'.

روزنامه 'day-letter', i.e. 'newspaper'.

کارخانه 'work-house', i.e. 'factory'.

These forms are particularly common with words like

گاه (place), نامه (letter), خانه (house), etc.

cf. also

ایران زمین the land of Iran.

مغرب زمین the land of the west (i.e. Europe).

### 38. Comparison of Adjectives

(a) The Comparative is formed by the addition of the suffix ...تر

بزرگتر 'bigger'. کوچکتر 'smaller'.

آسانتر 'easier'.

The equivalent of the English 'than' is the preposition از (see para. 59):

پسر از دختر بزرگتر است the boy is bigger than the girl.

این درس از آن آسانتر است this lesson is easier than that one.

The order of words in this type of sentence should be noted. This is the normal construction when two nouns are compared. When the comparison is between two actions, a different construction must be used (see para. 84a(c) (v), also para. 81).

(b) The Superlative is formed by adding the suffix **ترین**... to the positive form, e.g.

**بزرگترین** biggest. **کوچکترین** smallest.  
**آسانترین** easiest.

Certain words form their comparative and superlative degrees from different roots, notably

**خوب** good. **بهتر** better. **بهترین** best.

The Superlative may be used in two ways, differing very little from each other in meaning. In the first the superlative form is used as an adjective preceding the principal noun without *ezafe* (see para. 37(c)); in the second it is used as a noun linked to the following noun (put in the plural) in a more or less partitive sense (see para. 36(iii)).

**بزرگترین منزل** the biggest house.  
**بزرگترین منازل<sup>1</sup> این شهر** the biggest of the houses of this town.

The Superlative idea may also be expressed by using the comparative construction with **همه** 'all'.

**این منزل از همه بزرگتر است** this house is the biggest.

Note the following construction:

**یک اتاق بیشتر نیست** there is not more than one room  
 (lit. 'one room, there is not more')

**منزل** 'broken' plural of **منازل<sup>1</sup>**



Similarly,

صَدَلِی چیزِ دیگر      there is nothing but a chair (lit.  
نیست      'a chair, there is not another thing').

### 39. Hiatus

Persian orthography does not permit of two vowels coming together without a separating or buffer consonant. Thus when a suffix beginning with a vowel has to be added to a word ending in a vowel, or a prefix ending in a vowel has to be placed before a word beginning with a vowel, it is necessary to insert either *hamze* (the glottal stop) or *ye* (in certain cases other letters are also used). This spelling is in general reflected in pronunciation, although, as has been pointed out, the glottal stop in Persian is a very weak one, and often represents no more than a glide from one vowel to another.

#### A. Suffixes

(i) Suffixes beginning with *a* or *ā*, e.g. the *plural suffix* آن..., and also the *pronominal suffixes* (para. 41) and certain *verbal* (para. 53) and *adjectival suffixes* (para. 99).

(a) After words ending in ا... or و... the buffer letter is ی (ye) for all suffixes, with the exception noted below.

آقایان gentlemen (from آقا sir, gentleman).

سُخَنگویان spokesmen (from سُخَنگو spokesman).

In certain cases the final و... is resolved into وُ... (ov), e.g.

بازووان arms (from بازو arm).

بانوان ladies (from بانو lady).

(b) After words ending in ی... the buffer letter is *ye* for all suffixes as in (a), but although sounded it is not written, the original *ye* of the word doing duty for both.

شیرازیان *širaziyan* Shirazis (from شیرازی *Shirazi*).

(c) After words ending in ه... the buffer letter for the *plural suffix* ان... is ...گ... (*gaf*), which replaces the *he* (this letter is a survival of an older Persian form, originally found in the singular as well).

بچهگان *bacčegān* children (from بچه *bacče* child).

The *pronominal suffixes* will be dealt with in para. 41. The case of the *verbal suffixes* does not arise with words ending in ه.... The *adjectival suffixes* are dealt with in para. 99.

(ii) Suffixes beginning with *i*, e.g. the *indefinite suffix*, and also certain *verbal* (para. 53) and *nominal* and *adjectival suffixes* (para. 99).

(a) After words ending in ا... or و... the buffer letter is ؤ... (*hamze*), written over an undotted *ye*, for all types of suffix.

آقائی *āqā'ī* a gentleman.

بانوئی *bānu'ī* a lady.

(b) After words ending in ی... the *indefinite suffix* is generally neither written nor pronounced.

صندلی *сандлі* the chair, a chair.

Occasionally a *hamze* ... may be found written over the final *ye* of the word.

صندلیء

In verse, if the two syllables are required to be pronounced separately for the purposes of the metre, both *ye*'s may be written.

صندلی

The other cases (*verbal*, *nominal* and *adjectival suffixes*) very rarely occur.

(c) After Persian words ending in ه... the *indefinite suffix* may be represented either by a *hamze* written over the *he*, the *ye* of the suffix being omitted, or by writing the suffix as though it were a separate word, that is, with an initial *alef*.

خانه or خانهای a house.

The *nominal* and *adjectival suffixes* are dealt with in para. 99. The case of the *verbal suffixes* does not arise.

(iii) The Ezafe.

(a) After words ending in ا... or و... the buffer letter is ی....

پایِ مرد the foot of the man.

بویِ گل the smell of the rose.

پسرهایِ خوب the good boys.

(b) After words ending in ی... no buffer letter is required, though a *y* is sounded.

(*sandaliye* . . .) صندلیِ حسن Hasan's chair.

(c) After words ending in *ه...* a *hamze* is written over the *ه...*, though a *y* is sounded.

(*xaneyeh* . . .) خانۀ پیرزن the old woman's house.

Care must be taken not to confuse this group with Group (ii) above.

(iv) The two diphthongs *و...* and *ی...*, when followed by a suffix beginning with a vowel, are generally resolved into their component parts of short vowel *a* and consonant *v* or *y*. Thus *ou* becomes *av*, and *ei* becomes *ay*.

*peiravan* پیروان followers (from پیرو follower).

*payeh* . . . پی آن مرد (on) the track of that man (from پی track).

In the first case the *a* is often sounded *o* by assimilation, even though it is always written *ه...*: *peirovan*.

## B. Prefixes

The only prefixes involved are: (a) the *ezāfe*, (b) the *preposition به* (see para. 59), (c) three *verbal prefixes* (see para. 53).

The buffer letter following the *ezāfe* is the *hamze*, and no change in writing is therefore required, as this is already represented by the initial *alef* of the following word. This glottal stop should, however, be sounded fairly clearly.

خیابانهای این شهر the streets of this city.

## 39a. Intonation Patterns

Para. 36:

ˆ     ˆ     ˆ an ketab		ˆ     ˆ     ˆ     ˆ male hasan ast
ˆ     ˆ     ˆ in manzel		ˆ     ˆ     ˆ     ˆ az one rezast
ˆ     ˆ hasan		ˆ     ˆ     ˆ     ˆ pesarist javan

Para. 38:

- ^ - - ^ || - - ^ -  
 pesar az doxtar || bozorgtar ast  
 ^ - ^ || - - ^ -  
 in dars az on || asantari ast  
 - - ^ || - ^ - - - ^ -  
 in manzel || az hame bozorgtar ast  
 - - ^ || - ^ ^  
 yak otaq || bištar nist  
 - ^ || - - ^ ^  
 sandali || cizi digar nist

## EXERCISES

A. Translate into English:

1. آیا دَفْتَرِ آقايِ مُحَمَّدی اینجاست؟
2. بلی آقا خیلی نزدیک است
3. این روزنامه مالِ پرویز نیست
4. روزنامه‌های شهرِ تهران خیلی است
5. بزرگترین شهرِ ایرانِ تهران است ولی از آن زیباتر اصفهان است
6. آیا گوشتِ تازه هست؟
7. بلی خانم ولی این گوشت از آن بهتر است
8. همه مردم راضی اند
9. خوشوقت‌ترین روزِ سالِ ایرانی عیدِ نوروز است

10. کوچکترین عمارتِ این خیابان مغازه  
کَفَاش است

11. این کارخانه بزرگترین کارخانه‌های  
ایران است

12. اکثریتِ مردمِ کارگیر یا دهقان اند

### B. Translate into Persian:

1. All (of) the children are present. 2. The hair of the head of that girl is yellow, but this boy's is black. 3. This child's hands are dirty. 4. Ali's hands are cleaner than Faridun's. 5. Hasan and Hosein are Parvin's brothers. 6. Parvin is the daughter of the manager of the factory. 7. Is Reza smaller than Hosein? 8. No, he is bigger. 9. This deed (work) is the fault of that boy. 10. Hushang's sister is a pretty girl. 11. Is this building Hosein's house? 12. No, it is Hushang's.

### VOCABULARY

office دَفْتَر

festival عید

newspaper روزنامه

shoemaker کَفَاش

Parviz پرویز

workman کارگیر

Tehran تِهْران

factory کارخانه

all همه

majority اکثریت

happy خوشوقت

peasant دهقان

year سال

all, whole تمام

Iranian, Persian ایرانی

hair مو

head سَر

Faridun فَرِيدُون

black سیاه

fault تَقْصِير

dirty کَثِیف

Hushang هُوشَنگ

Ali عَلی

pretty خُوشْگِل

clean پاک

## LESSON VI

## Pronouns and Pronominal Adjectives

## 40. The Personal Pronouns

The Personal Pronouns occur in two forms, as separate words and as suffixes.

## (i) Separate

	Singular		Plural
1.	مَنْ I	ما	we
2.	تُو you	شُمَا	you
3.	او he, she, it	ایشان	they

'It' and 'they', when referring to inanimate objects, are more often rendered by آن 'that' and آنها 'those' (see para. 43).

تُو (the second person singular) is used only in addressing intimate friends, children, servants, and so on; in other cases شُمَا (the second person plural) is used in a singular as well as a plural sense (cf. 'vous' in French). Similarly, though less consistently, the third person plural may be used for the third person singular.

It will be recalled that **تو** is pronounced *to* (para. 24).

The separate pronouns may be used:

- (a) as the subject of a sentence (see also para. 87).

**او تنبَل است** he is lazy.

This use is not essential, and in fact arises only when emphasis is needed.

- (b) as the possessor (with *ezāfe*).

**این مَترِلِ تُو است** this is your house.

**آن پِسرِ مَن است** that is my son.

**کِتابِ تازِه مَن** my new book.

**این کِتاب مالِ مَن است** this book is mine.

- (c) as the object of a verb (see para. 54).

- (d) after prepositions (see para. 60).

The pronouns may be used in conjunction with the demonstrative adjectives.

**این کِتابِ مَن** this book of mine (lit. this book of me).

**آن پِسرِ تُو** that son of yours (lit. that son of you).

**تُست = است** **تو** may be contracted in writing with **است** (the purely orthographic **و** being dropped).

## (ii) Suffixes

Singular

Plural

1. **مَ...** my, me

**مَآن...** our, us





The pronominal suffixes may be used in the following construction, which is designed to give prominence to the logical subject of a sentence when it is not actually the grammatical subject.

این کتاب | رَنگَش سُرَخ است

this book's colour is red, this book is coloured red  
(lit. 'this book, its colour is red').

تُو | مَنَزَلَت این است؟

is this your house? (lit. 'you, is this your house?').

In this type of construction, which has many variations in Persian, the complete sentence is formed from (i) the *subject* and (ii) the *predicate*, itself a complete sentence whose only link with the main subject is a pronoun, not necessarily the grammatical subject of the verb.

#### 41. Hiatus

After words ending in a vowel, the suffixes conform to the rules already given in para. 39A (i). The only case that requires special note is that of words ending in *ā*.... After this ending the suffixes are generally written as though they were separate words, i.e. beginning with an *alef*.

بَچَه آم my child.

خانَه آش his house.

#### 42. The Reflexive Pronouns

For further emphasis the word *خود* 'self' may be used with either the separate or suffix forms of the pronouns.

خُودَم، خودِ مَن myself.

خودَش، خودِ او himself.

این منزل مالِ خودم است      this house is my own.

خودش حاضر است      he himself is present.

In the same way **خود** may be used with a qualifying noun, either following or preceding:

خودِ رئیس      the manager himself.

خودِ هوشنگ، هوشنگِ خود      Hushang himself.

خودِ پدرم، پدرمِ خود      my father himself.

There is no plural form of **خود**:

خودِ برادران      the brothers themselves  
خودشان      themselves

For the use of **خود** (and also **خویش**) without suffixes see para. 54.

#### 43. The Demonstratives

این      this.

آن      that.

When used as adjectives, the demonstratives remain unchanged in the plural. Used as pronouns, they take the normal plural endings:

آنها ، آنان

They are frequently found compounded with other words,  
e.g. اینجا here, آنجا there (جا place); همان, همین the same  
(چون like); چنان, چنین such (هم even).

این and آن are commonly used in the sense of 'the former' and 'the latter'.

کتاب و قلمی اینجا است؛ این سرخ است  
و آن سبز

a book and pen are here; the latter is red and the former green.

#### 44. Interrogatives

The interrogative words may be used as either pronouns, conjunctions or adjectives. As pronouns or conjunctions, they are generally placed as near as possible to the verb, as adjectives they immediately precede the word qualified.

کی، که؟ who?

چه کتابی، چه کتاب؟ e.g. what? what book?

کدام؟ which? چه چیز؟ what (thing)?

چه is often found in compounds such as the following:

چگونه، چه گونه؛ چطور، چه طور  
what kind of? how?

چيست، کيست چه and کی، آست With

The following are common interrogative conjunctions:

چرا why? چون how?  
کی when? چند how much? how many?  
کجا where?

این مرد کیست؟	who is this man?
این کتاب چیست؟	what is this book?
این چه کتابی است؟	what book is this?
کدام پسر حسن است؟	which boy is Hasan?
احوال شما چطور است؟	how are you? (lit. how are your conditions?).
دستهایت چرا کثیف است؟	why are your hands dirty?
ساعتِ درستان کی است؟	when is (the hour of) your lesson?
دوستت کجاست؟	where is your friend?

Note that the interrogative word normally comes next to the verb.

#### 45. Pronouns and Adjectives of Quantity, etc.

Adjectives of quantity (and also numerals, see para. 88) generally precede (without *ezāfe*) the noun they qualify, which is put in the singular. This is also true of compound expressions such as

همه جور، چه قدر، این قدر, etc. (see below).

- (i) هر 'each, every, any' is generally used as an adjective.

هر کس everyone.

هر سال each year.

Compounded with certain words, هر is equivalent to the English suffix '-ever'.

هرچه whatever.

هرجا، هرکجا wherever.

هرجا هست لازم است wherever it is, it is necessary.

Prefixed to چه and an adjective in the comparative, it is equivalent to 'as. . . as possible'.

هرچه زودتر as soon as possible (lit. whatever sooner).

(ii) همه may be used either as a pronoun, 'the whole, all' or as adjective, 'each, every':

همه سال all (of) the year.

همه سال every year.

همه کس every one (person).

همه جا everywhere.

همه جای ایران everywhere in (lit. of) Iran.

(iii)

چند some.

چند کتاب some books.

چند { how many?

چند کتاب؟ how many books?

چه قدر { how much?

چقدر چای؟ how much tea?

چندان so many

چندین several.

خَیْلِ	many, much.	خَیْلِ مَنَزِل	many houses.
بِسیار	many, much.	بِسیار بَچَه	many children.
زِیاد	many, much.	زِیاد گوشت	much meat.
		or گوشتِ زِیاد	
این قدر، آن قدر	so much.	آنقدر نان	so much bread.
کَمی (یَک)	a little.	کَمی آب	a little water.
قَدری (یَک)	a quantity, some.	قَدری آب	some water.
بیشتر	more, most.	بیشتر کتاب	more books.
		بیشترِ مَرَدُم	most of the people.
اَندَک	little.	اَندَک وَقْتُ	little time.
		اَندَکی	a little.
یَک خُردَه	a bit, a little.	یَک خُردَه نان	a little bread.
یَکی	one, someone.		
هَمه جور	all kinds.	هَمه جور مَغازِه	all kinds of shop.

(iv) هیچ 'any' may be used either as a pronoun or as an adjective.

In both cases the verb must be put in the negative, though the negative

particle may be omitted in the interrogative form. As in the case of adjectives of quantity (para. iii above), a noun qualified by هیچ is always in the singular, and may also take the indefinite suffix ی... (cf. چه above).

هیچ نان نیست	there is no bread.
آیا هیچ آب هست؟	is there any water?
آیا هیچ آب نیست؟ هیچ نیست	isn't there any water? There is none.
هیچکس اینجا نیست	no-one (lit. no person) is here.

(v) دیگر 'other' has the following uses as adjective and noun:

پسرِ دیگر، دیگر پسر	the other boy.
پسرِ دیگری، پسرِ دیگر	another boy.
دیگری	another (person, etc.).
کسی دیگر	another person, someone else.
یکی دیگر	another (person, etc.).

*Note.* The last use is not to be confused with یکدیگر 'one another'.

#### 45a. Intonation Patterns

All these sentences follow the general pattern of a rising intonation for the introductory part, followed by a falling intonation (at any rate where



a statement is concerned). In the case of questions, where there is no interrogative pronoun, the sentence ends on a rising intonation; but in questions that have an interrogative pronoun, the stress, which is accompanied by a high pitch, falls on the pronoun, and the rest of the sentence has a falling intonation.

Para. 40:

in || manzele tost  
an || pesare manast  
in ketab || male manast

Para. 43:

ketab o qalami injust || in sorx ast o an sabz

Para. 44:

in mard || kist  
in || ce ketabist  
kodam pesar || hasan ast  
dasthayat || cera kasifast  
sa ?ate darsatan || kei ast

### EXERCISES

A. Translate into English:

1. مَزِلْتَانِ کُجَاسْت؟
2. مَزِلْتَمِ هَمِينِجَاسْت
3. وَلَايَتِ تُو کُجَاسْت؟

4. ولایتَم اصفهان است  
 5. آن شهر چطور است؟  
 6. شهر خیلی خوبی است  
 7. آیا مسجدهای آنجا خیلی کوچک نیست؟  
 8. تَخیر آقا چندین مسجدِ بزرگ هست  
 9. این کاغذ مالِ شماست  
 10. چه خبر است؟  
 11. خبر خوبی است  
 12. هیچ خبری از این بهتر نیست

B. Translate into Persian:

1. Who is that strange person? 2. His name is not known. 3. Whose are these books? 4. These are Hasan's, but those are someone else's. 5. Is my father present himself? 6. Which boy is younger? 7. Hushang is much younger than Ali. 8. What book is this? 9. It is a history book (book of history). 10. Every winter there is much snow. 11. How many houses are there here? 12. It is not known, but there are many.

VOCABULARY

where? کجا	manner طور
just here همینجا	how چطور
home (city, province, country) ولایت	mosque مسجد
what? چه	several چندین

any	هیچ	someone else	کسی دیگر
person	شخص	history	تاریخ
name	اسم	winter	زمستان
known	معلوم	snow	برف

## LESSON VII

### The Verb: Simple Tenses. Verbal Sentences

#### 46. The Verbal Stems

The conjugation of all Persian verbs is founded upon two stems, generally known as the *Present Stem* and the *Past Stem*. Once these are known for any given verb, that verb may be conjugated according to the one standard conjugation existing in Persian.

(i) The 'dictionary' form of the verb is the *Infinitive* (for its uses see paras. 70, 86). The Infinitive of all verbs ends in either *-dan* or *-tan*.

خریدن	to buy.
آوردن	to bring.
کشتن	to kill.
دانستن	to know.
ساختن	to make.
دیدن	to see.

(ii) The *Past Stem* is formed by cutting off the suffix *-an*. Thus all Past Stems end in either *-d* or *-t*.

خرید...	buy ...
آورد...	bring ...
کشت...	kill ...

... دانست know ...

... ساخت make ...

... دید see ...

There are no exceptions to this rule.

(iii) The *Present Stem* is formed from the Past Stem in a variety of ways.

(1) Regular

(a) Past Stems ending in *-id* lose this syllable.

... خر buy ...

(b) Past Stems ending in *-d*, in which the penultimate letter is *n*, *r*, *a*, or *u*, lose the letter *-d*.

... آور bring ...

(c) Past Stems ending in *-t*, in which the penultimate letter is *f* or *s*, lose the letter *-t*.

... کش kill ...

(d) Past Stems ending in *-est*, *-eft*, *-oft*, and *-ad* lose this syllable.

... دان know ...

(2) Irregular

(e) A large number of common verbs, *including* many in the above categories, form their Present Stems irregularly (after dropping the *d/t*), either by a change in the final consonant, or by some greater change—even a different stem altogether.

... ساز make ...

... بین see ...

Apart from isolated instances, this is the only type of irregularity found in the Persian verb. The Present Stems of irregular verbs are given in most dictionaries (including the vocabularies at the end of this book), and should be learnt in conjunction with the Infinitive.

It will be appreciated that the Present Stem is in fact the basic element in the verb, and that the other forms have been derived etymologically from it, the 'irregularities' arising out of the assimilation of the final consonant of the Present Stem to the dental of the Infinitive ending.

**48. Endings and Prefixes****(a) Personal Endings**

The simple tenses of the verb are formed by combining the above two stems with the following personal endings:

	Singular	Plural
1.	م...	یم...
2.	ی...	ید...
3. (Pres. Stem only)	د...	ند...

No ending is used for the 3rd Person Singular of tenses formed from the *Past Stem*.

These endings must not be confused with the Pronominal Suffixes (see para. 40(ii)).

**(b) Verbal Prefixes**

Three prefixes are used in the conjugation of the verb.

- (a) ...می, denoting continuity or repetition of action.
- (b) ...به, denoting an element of doubt or futurity.
- (c) ...نه, denoting the negative.

All these prefixes may be written separately or joined to the verb. In the second case the *he* of به and نه must be dropped. Contrary to the general rule laid down in para. 9, these prefixes attract the main stress in the word, though there may be a secondary stress on the last syllable. When two occur together (in practice only ...نمی = نه می), the first takes the stress.

**49. Tenses formed from the Past Stem**

(a) The *Simple Past Tense* is formed by the addition of the Personal Endings to the Past Stem.

خریدم	I bought.	خریدیم	we bought.
خریدی	you bought.	خریدید	you bought.
خرید	he (she, it) bought.	خریدند	they bought.

(b) The *Imperfect Tense* is formed by adding the prefix ...می (denoting continuous or repeated action) to the Past Tense.

می‌خریدم	I was buying.	می‌خریدیم	we were buying.
می‌خریدی	you were buying.	می‌خریدید	you were buying.
می‌خرید	he (she, it) was buying.	می‌خریدند	they were buying.

### 50. Tenses formed from the Present Stem

(a) The *Present Continuous Tense* is formed by adding the Personal Endings to the Present Stem, and also the prefix ...می.

می‌خرم	I am buying.	می‌خریم	we are buying.
می‌خری	you are buying.	می‌خرید	you are buying.
می‌خرد	he (she, it) is buying.	می‌خرند	they are buying.

(b) The *Present Subjunctive Tense* is formed by adding the Personal Endings to the Present Stem, and also optionally the prefix ...به.

بِخَرم	(that) I may buy.	بِخَرم	(that) we may buy.
بِخَری	... you may buy.	بِخَرید	... you may buy.
بِخَرد	... he (she, it) may buy.	بِخَرنند	... they may buy.

(c) The *Imperative* or *Jussive* is the same as the *Present Subjunctive*, except for the 2nd Person Singular, which has no personal ending.

بِخَرم	let me buy.		
بِخَرد	let him buy, etc.	but:	بِخَرم buy! (sing.).

*Note.* When the *Present Stem* ends in ...av, this becomes ...ou in the Imperative 2nd Person Singular.

رفتَن go: Present Stem. ... رَوَ (rav-), Imperative Singular. بَرَوَ (berou—see para. 12).

In speech the Subjunctive and Jussive/Imperative are usually distinguished by the stress, which in the former tends to fall on the personal ending, and in the latter on the prefix.

### 51. The Negative

The negative conjugation of the verb is obtained by prefixing the particle *na* . . . to the appropriate tenses. The prefix *mi* . . . is retained, but the prefix *be* . . . must be dropped.

نَمِخَرِيدَمْ I was not buying.

نَخَرِيدَمْ I did not buy.

نَمِخَرَم I am not buying.

نَخَرَم . . . I may not buy.

نَخَر do not buy!

In more formal style the negative prefix . . . مَ may be used with the 2nd Person Imperative (though not with any other tense).

آتْرَا مَخُورُ! do not eat that!

### 52. Summary of Simple Tenses

Inflection	Stem	Prefix	Tense
Past		—	Past.
		می	Imperfect.
Personal endings	Present	می	Present.
		(به)	Present Subjunctive.
		(به)	Imperative and Jussive.

### 53. Hiatus

#### (i) Personal Endings

After Present Stems ending in a vowel, e.g. نمودن show, Present Stem نَمَا گفتن say, tell, Present Stem گو, a buffer letter must be inserted before the Personal Endings. Before the endings beginning with *a* . . . (Singular 1 and 3, Plural 3) this is always *ye*; before those beginning with *i* . . . (Singular 2, Plural 1 and 2) it is always *hamze* written over a *ye* without dots (see para. 39 A).

. . . *a-am* = . . . *ayam* می‌آیم I am showing.

. . . *u-ad* = . . . *uyad* می‌گوید he is saying.

... *a-im* = ... *aʔim*      ائیم...      مینائیم      we are showing,  
 ... *u-id* = ... *uʔid*      وئید...      میگوئید      you are saying.

Stems ending in other vowels are virtually non-existent.

## (ii) Verbal Prefixes

When the verb begins with a vowel, a buffer letter must be inserted, unless the prefix is written separately. When the verbal vowel is *i* . . . , the normal practice is to leave the original initial *alef* to represent a glottal stop inserted between prefix and stem. In all other cases, the buffer letter inserted is *ye* (in the case of ... می the buffer *ye* is not written, the *ye* of the prefix doing duty for both).

*be-avar* . . . -    *beyavar* . . .    ... بیاور  
*na-avar* . . . -    *nayavar* . . .    ... نیاور  
*mi-avar* . . . -    *miyavar* . . .    ... میاور    or    می آور  
 (from آوردن, bring; Present Stem آور)

*be-ist* . . . -    *beʔist* . . .    ... بایست    or    به ایست  
*na-ist* . . . -    *naʔist* . . .    ... نایست    or    نه ایست  
*mi-ist* . . . -    *miʔist* . . .    ... می ایست  
 (from ایستادن, stand; Present Stem ایست)

*be-oft* . . . -    *beyoft* . . .    ... بیفت  
*na-oft* . . . -    *nayoft* . . .    ... نیفت  
*mi-oft* . . . -    *miyoft* . . .    ... میفت    or    می افت  
 (from افتادن, fall; Present Stem افت)

## 54. Verbal Sentences

The normal order of a verbal sentence is: Subject, Indirect Object, Direct Object, Verb.

The Direct Object of a verb is indicated by the use of the postposition را (formerly a noun), which is suffixed to the word or group of words constituting the Object. This is not, however, used unless the Object is definite.



- کتاب را (کتابرا) خریدَم I bought the book.  
 کتاب خواهرِ اُورا میخوانم I am reading his sister's book.  
 این کتابرا بده Give [me] this book.

When the Object is not definite, two uses are possible—the word with the indefinite suffix *می...*, and the word without either suffix or post-position. The second gives the word a general or generic sense.

- کتابی میخواند he is reading a book (some particular book or other).  
 کتاب میخواند he is reading (a book or books, the emphasis being on the action), or: he reads books (in general).  
 کتابرا میخواند he is reading the book (already referred to).

*را*... is suffixed to the Separate forms of the Personal Pronouns, which undergo no change except in the case of the 1st and 2nd Persons Singular [see para. 40(i) (c)].

- |      |      |      |             |
|------|------|------|-------------|
| مَنْ | 1.   | مَرا | me.         |
| تو   | you. | تُرا | you (acc.). |

These changes apply whether the pronoun itself is the object, or whether it is simply the last of the group of words composing the object.

- مَرا دید he saw me.  
 اِسْمِ تَرا میداند he knows your name.

In colloquial and poetical styles the pronouns as direct objects are often represented by the pronominal suffixes attached directly to the verb:

- دیدَمَش I saw him.

Sometimes the pronoun may be attached to some other word, in which position it must not be confused with its possessive sense.

- بِخاکش سپردند they buried him (lit. they entrusted him to (see para. 59) the earth).

When a pronoun used in a possessive or other sense refers to the *subject* of the verb of the sentence or clause *in which it occurs*, the word



## VOCABULARY

Present Stems of irregular verbs are given in brackets.

to have <sup>1</sup> داشتَن (دار)	to come آمدَن (آ)
sort, kind جور	to knock, strike زدَن (زَن)
goods جنس	to bring آوردَن
to sell فروختَن (فروش)	to eat, drink خُوردَن <sup>2</sup>
clothes لباس	sweets شیرینی
to buy خریدَن	accident حادثه
shirt, blouse پیراهَن	driver راننده، شوفر
white سفید	careless غافل
skirt دامن	to drive راندَن
hat کلاه	motor-car اُتومبیل
to wish, want, خواستَن (خواه)	policeman پاسبان
ask for	first اوّل
to see دیدَن (بین)	fault تقصیر
neighbouring مُجاور	to take, seize گِرفَتَن (گیر)
bookshop کتابخانه	to carry, take away بُردَن (بر)
bookseller کتابفروش	dangerous خطرناک
to call, read خواندَن <sup>2</sup>	(motor-)vehicle ماشین
to say, tell گفتَن (گو)	to go رَفَتَن (رو)

<sup>1</sup> داشتَن does not take prefixes می and به (see para. 71).

<sup>2</sup> Silent *vav* (see para. 27).

## LESSON VIII

### Adverbs. Prepositions. Conjunctions

#### 55. Nouns used as Adverbs

Most nouns of time and many of place may be used as adverbs without change, either alone or qualified.

روز	by day.
روزی	one day.
شَب، شَبها	at night.
روزِ تَعطیل	on the holiday.
صُبحِ زود	in the early morning.
سالِ گُذَشته	last year.
هَفْتَهٗ آيَنده	next week.
هِنِگامِ غُرُوبِ آفتاب	at sunset (at the time of the setting of the sun).
ساعتِ ناهار	at lunch-time (at the hour of lunch).
وَقْتِ مُسافَرَتِ ما	at the time of our journey.
مَوْقِعِ حَرَکَتِ	at the moment of departure.

The following may be used as nouns, though more frequently adverbially:

امروز	today.	فردا	tomorrow.
امشب	tonight.	فردا شب	tomorrow night.
دیروز	yesterday.	پس فردا	the day after to-morrow.
دیشب	last night.	فردایِ آن روز	the day following that day.
پَرِروز	the day before yesterday.		
پَرِشب	the night before last.		

The following nouns are mainly used as adverbs (or prepositions, see para. 58):

بیرون، خارج outside.

داخل، تو inside.

پائین below.

بالا above.

جلو، پیش in front.

پشت، عقب behind.

### 56. Adjectives used as Adverbs

Any suitable adjective may be used as an adverb without change.

زود quick, quickly, soon.

خیلی، بسیار much.

کم little.

دور far.

خوب good, well.

تنها only, alone.

سخت کوشید he tried hard.

Many adjectives of quantity are used in this way, sometimes with the addition of the indefinite suffix ی...

بیشتر، أغلب more, mostly.

چندان somewhat.

هیچ not at all, never (with negative).

هیچ وقت never (with negative).

دیگر more, again; (with neg.) (no) more, (no) longer.

چندی for some time.

### 57. Other Adverbs

A certain number of other words are currently used only in an adverbial sense.

هَم	even; also; together (usually follows the noun).
پَس	then, next.
نیز	also.
بَس	enough.
همیشه	always.
هرگز	never (with negative).
اکنون	now, at present.

هنوز (still, yet) is normally used with a negative verb.

هنوز نیامد he has not yet come.

پیش, when used of time, has the sense of 'ago'.

یک هفته پیش one week ago.

A number of common adverbs are borrowed from Arabic:

فقط	only.
حتی (pron. <i>hatta</i> ) <sup>1</sup>	even (usually precedes the noun).
یعنی	that is to say.
علیحدہ (pron. <i>alahede</i> ) <sup>1</sup>	separately.
حالا	now.
آلآن ( <i>alʔan</i> )	just now, directly, presently.
آلبتہ	certainly.

<sup>1</sup> In a certain number of words of Arabic origin a final *a* is represented by a *ye* preceded by *fathe* (instead of the usual *alef*). Occasionally *ye* is so used in the middle of a word (in fact between two words run together): *علی حدہ* for *علی حدۃ* (Arabic = 'on singleness').

Some of these still retain the Arabic Accusative ending . . . *an* (used in Arabic to form adverbs). This is written as a doubled *fathe* followed by *alef*. أ... .

أَصْلًا	originally, at all.	أَخِيرًا	lately.
فَعَلًا	actually.	سَابِقًا	formerly.
تَقْرِيْبًا	nearly.	طَبْعًا	naturally.
أَقْلًا	at least.	كَامِلًا	completely.

A variant on this spelling is found in words retaining the Arabic feminine ending in the same case, . . . *atan*. This is written as a *he* with two dots over it and the doubled *fathe*, but no *alef*: هَ... .

حَقِيقَةً	really, truly.
نِسْبَةً	relatively.
عِجَالَةً	for the time being.

A common error, found even in Persian books, is to spell these as though they belonged to the first group, with تَ... . A more serious error, but one also found occasionally in Persian books, is to use the spelling هَ... . for certain adverbs ending in . . . *atan*, where this is not, in fact, the Arabic feminine, e.g.

(correct spelling) مَوْقِتًا temporarily (from root وَقَت, see paras. 103, 106).

Sometimes this Arabic suffix is attached to a Persian or European word:

تَلِفُونًا by telephone.

## 58. Prepositional Expressions

The great majority of the words used to render prepositions in Persian are nouns or adverbs, some of them obsolete in any other use but this, but most of them still current. As such, they are naturally linked to the word they govern by the *ezafé*.

رَو	on (lit. face).	رَوِ مِيز	on the table.
سَر	on (lit. head).	سَرِ كُوه	on the mountain.

جا	instead of (lit. place).	جایِ مَن	instead of me.
دَم	at, near (lit. mouth, breath).	دَمِ دَر	at the door.
طَرَف، سو	towards (lit. side, direction).	آن طَرَفِ ...	on that (the far) side of.
		این طَرَفِ ...	on this (the near) side of.
داخل، تو	inside.		
خارج، بیرون	outside.		
پُشت	behind (lit. back).	پُشتِ دَر	behind the door.
بالا	above.		
پائین	below, at the foot of.		
زیر، تحت	beneath.		
پیش	near, in the presence (company) of, in front of.		
جلو	in front of.		
پس، عقب	behind.		
نزد، نزدیک	near.		
بین، میان	between, in the midst of.		

The form *برای*, the usual word for 'for', is an archaic combination of *ba-* (= modern *be-*) and *ra* (see para. 54).

این کاغذ برای علی است    this letter is for Ali.

### 59. Prepositions

The following (apart from a few rarities) are the only true prepositions in Persian. They are not followed by the *ezāfe*.

از	from.	به	to, with (instrumental).
با	with, in company with.	بر	on.



در	in.	جز	except.
بی	without.	مگر	except.
تا	as far as, until.	چون	like.

The first four are used idiomatically after a large number of verbs.

از منزل خود رفت	he went from his house.
کتابرا از بچه گرفت	he took the book from the child.
با پسر خود آمد	he came with his son.
سیبی بمن داد	he gave (to) me an apple.
باصفهان رفت	he went to Isfahan.
بر صندلی نشست	he sat on the chair.
تا اصفهان رفت	he went as far as Isfahan.
در اطاق کسی نبود	there was no one in the room.
کاملاً بی پول است	he is completely without money.
جز او کسی نبود	there was no one except him.

(a) *از* is frequently found as the second element in compound prepositions, in which the other element is an adverb.

از پیش	قبل از	before (time).
پیش از ناهار	e.g.	before lunch.
پیش آن منزل	but	in front of that house.
بعد از	پس از	after (time).
غیر از		other than, besides.

Apart from its use with comparative adjectives (see para. 38), *از* also has a partitive use, generally after a noun of quantity with the indefinite *ی*..., though the prepositional phrase may also stand by itself as the subject or object of a verb. In this use it may replace the *ezafe* construction where the first noun is required to be indefinite and the second definite.

بسیاری از شهرها	many of the cities.
چندی از مردم	some of the people.
بعضی از بچه‌ها	some of the children.
یکی از ایشان	one of them.
هیچ یکی از مردم	none of the people.
فهرستی از کتابها	a list of the books.
از آن سیبها بده	give [me some] of those apples.
از مردم شهر حاضر بودند	[some] of the townspeople (people of the town) were present.

(b) به may be written either separately or joined to the following word (in which case the *he* is dropped).

به منزلتم، بمترلم to my house.

When preceding a word beginning with an *alef* (i.e. with a vowel) it may be written either separately or joined, but in the second case the *alef* continues to be written, even though it is no longer the initial letter (see para. 39 B above).

به ایران or بایران to Iran.

.. به او or باو، بآن or به آن، باین or به این.., to that . . ., to him.

Before این and او a *d* is often inserted in place of the *alef*.

بدین، بدان، بدو to this, to that, to him.

به has a great many idiomatic uses, and is also frequently used in compounds with other prepositions (see para. 60).

اورا بچوب زدند they beat him with [a] stick.

بنظر من in my opinion.

این را بیک تومان میدهم I [will] give [i.e. sell] this for one *tuman*.

این منزل بزرگی آن نیست this house is not as big as that [one].

(c) *بَر* is comparatively rarely used by itself in current Persian, but is commonly prefixed to prepositional expressions with similar meaning (see para. 60). It is also found in such compound prepositions as *بَر مَبْنِی بَر* 'according to' (lit. 'based upon, building upon').

*بِنَا بَر اِین* accordingly, therefore.

*مَبْنِی بَر دَسْتوراتِ رَئِیس* according to the instructions of the manager.

## 60. Compound Prepositions

These prepositions are frequently used with the prepositional expressions listed in para. 58, with such modifications of meaning as arise naturally.

*بَر رَو، بَر سَر* on.

*بِجَا* instead of.

*بِطَرَف* towards.

*آز بیرون* from outside.

*دَر مِیَان* in between.

*تا پائِین* as far as the foot of.

*بِجِلْو* to the front of.

All prepositions and prepositional expressions may be used with the separate forms of the pronouns; in poetry and colloquial usage it is also common to use them with the pronominal suffixes.

*آز او* or *آزَش* from him.

*پُشتِ شُما* or *پُشتان* behind you.

*پیش* is often used to replace the verb 'to have', e.g.

*کِتَابِ پیشِ مَن است* I have the book.

Where a preposition governs a series of nouns linked by 'and', it is not necessary to repeat it.

*مَرْدُم در کوچه‌ها و خیابانها و میدانها آند* The people are in the side-streets, streets and squares.

## 61. Prepositional Adjectives and Adverbs

Prepositional groups, e.g. nouns governed by prepositions, may often be used to qualify nouns, using the ordinary *ezafe* construction. Some of these instances are so common as to have attained the status of adjectives, and may take the comparative and superlative endings (see para. 100c).

مَنْزِلِ پُشتِ آن عِمَارَتِ	the house behind that building.
نَوَکَرِ باوفا	the loyal servant (lit. with loyalty).
دُشْمَنِ بِي وفا	the treacherous enemy (lit. without loyalty).
بِي وَفَاتَرینِ دُشْمَنِ	the most treacherous enemy.

Prepositions may be used sometimes with adverbs:

تاکنون	till now.
باهم	together.

## 62. Co-ordinating Conjunctions

The following conjunctions are among the commoner ones used to link independent sentences (for those used with subordinate clauses see Lessons x, xi, xii).

وَ (va)، وَ (o)	and.
وَلٰی، وَلٰیكِن، لٰیكِن، اَمَّا	but.
یا، وَا	or.
هَمْ... هَمْ، چِه... چِه	both . . . and.
یا... (وَ) یا، خواه... خواه	either . . . or.
نَه... (وَ) نَه	neither . . . nor.
بَلْکِه	or rather, perhaps.
مَکَر	surely . . . ? (used with negative verb when expecting the answer 'yes', and vice versa—see para. 29).
مَکَر اینجا نیست؟	isn't he here? (i.e. surely he is).

In a series of closely linked words, وَ generally takes the enclitic (i.e. *unstressed* suffix) form *o* :

پِدَرُو مَادَرُو خَوَاهَرُو بَرَادَرِ مَن  
حاضراند      brother and sister are here.  
(i.e. *pedaro madaro . . .*)

In less close links, and especially in linking sentences, the usual form is وَ (*va*) (which sometimes carries a slight stress).

مَادَرِ مَن اینجاست وِ پِدَرِ مَن آنجا      my mother is here and my  
father there.  
(i.e. . . . *injast va pedar-e man . . .*)

But it should be noted that there is no orthographical change to indicate which is to be used, and in fact the choice lies with the individual taste of the speaker or reader. Thus, in both the above examples, the opposite forms could be used without altering the sense.

Various adverbs and adverbial expressions often take the place of conjunctions.

هم      also.  
پس      then.  
آنوقت      then (lit. at that time).  
بنابراین      therefore, etc.

### 63. Word Order and Stress

Reference was made in paras. 18 and 54 to the word order of a simple sentence. Where adverbial and other expressions are involved, the order is as follows, though this may be altered where required for special emphasis.

Subject/Adverbial Expressions: (a) Time. (b) Place/Attribute or Complement/Direct Object/Compound Element in Verb (see para. 72)/Finite Verb.

It is, however, quite usual for the Adverbial Expression of Time to be placed at the beginning of the sentence, especially when it links in some way with the preceding statement. Similarly in colloquial style

(especially in narrative) an Adverbial Expression of Place may *follow* such verbs as 'go', 'come', 'look', etc.

صبحِ زود پسرِ نجار رفت خانه early in the morning the son of the carpenter went home.

As stated in para. 9, the guiding rule is that the main stress falls on the last integral syllable of the word. The main exceptions to this are: (a) verbal forms carrying one of the stressed verbal prefixes (para. 48), (b) particles and conjunctions with the general meanings of 'yes' and 'no' (بلکه، لیکن، ولی، آما), 'but' (آری، بلی، نخبیر)، 'perhaps' (شاید)، in all of which the main stress tends to fall on the first syllable.

### 63a. Intonation Patterns

The 'step-by-step' rising intonation in the third and fourth examples should be noted.

Para 58:

in kāqez || baraye alist

Para. 60:

ketab || piše manast  
mardom || dar kuceha va xiyabanha va meidanha ?and

Para. 62:

pedaro mādarō xaharō barādare man || hazerand  
mādare-man injast va || pedare man ānja  
magarinja nist?

### EXERCISES

A. Translate into English:

روزی مُلاً نصرُ الدین پیشِ شیرینی فروش رفت، شیرینی خیلِ میخواست آما دیناری در جیبش نبود. پس داخلِ دُکان رفت شیرینی

میخورد. صاحب دُکَّان پول میخواست مُلّا نشنید. صاحب دکان عَصَبانی شد مُلّا را چَند بار با چوب زد. مُلّا همیشه شیرینی میخورد وگفت «چه شهر خویست وجه مرْدُمِ مِهْرَبانی دارد، غریبانرا بِضَرْبِ چوب میزنند و میگویند باز هَم شیرینی بخور».

#### B. Translate into Persian:

Persia is a very old country. Civilized men lived there more than seven thousand years ago. The most important centre of civilization was Susa. Nearly three thousand years ago the Aryan tribes came to Persia from Central Asia. They were the ancestors of the Persians of today. They built the cities of Hamadan and Persepolis. During (In) this period the prophet Zoroaster taught a new religion. The most famous king of the Persians was Darius the Achaemenian. At the end (In the last parts) of the sixth century B.C. he took the whole of Persia, Mesopotamia, Syria, and Egypt, and sent his armies into India. After two hundred years Alexander the Greek defeated the Persian armies, and the last king of the Achaemenian dynasty died.

#### VOCABULARY

molla, priest	مُلا	owner	صاحب
Molla Nasroddin <sup>1</sup>	مُلا نصرُ الدّین	money	پول
near, in the presence of, 'chez'	پیش	to hear	شنیدَن (شنَو)
confectioner	شیرینی فروش	angry	عَصَبانی
but	أَمَّا	to become	شدَن (شو)
dinar (small coin)	دینار	time	بار
in	دَر	wood, stick	چوب
to be	بودَن (باش)	to strike	زدَن (زَن)
then	پَس	always	همیشه
inside	داخل	to say	گفتَن (گو)
shop	دُکَّان	kind (adj.)	مِهْرَبان

<sup>1</sup> For spelling see para. 108.

with به	to teach (آموز)
blow ضرب	famous مشهور
again باز	king پادشاه
old, ancient قدیم	Darius داریوش
civilized متمدن	Achaemenian هخامنشی
to live (زی) زیستن	last parts اواخر
seven [see paras. 45 (iii), 88] هفت	century قرن
thousand هزار	sixth (see para. 90) ششم
important مهم	B.C. قبل از میلاد
centre مرکز	Mesopotamia عراق
civilization تمدن	Syria سوریه
Susa شوش	Egypt مصر
three [see paras. 45 (iii), 88] سه	army لشکر
tribe (pl. ایلات) ایل	India هند، هندوستان
Aryan آریائی	to send (فرستادن) فرستادن
Asia آسیا	two hundred [see paras. 45 (iii), 88] دویست
central مرکزی	Alexander اسکندر
ancestor (pl. آجداد) جد	Greek, Roman رومی
to build (ساز) ساختن	to defeat, (شکستن) شکستن
Hamadan همدان	break
Persepolis تخت جمشید	last آخرین (precedes the noun, see para. 90)
period دوره	dynasty خاندان
Zoroaster زردشت	to die (میر) مردن
prophet پیغمبر	
religion دین	



## LESSON IX

**The Verb: Compound Tenses. Uses of Tenses.  
Compound Verbs**

**64. The Past Participle**

The only participle used in the conjugation of the verb is the *Past Participle*. This is formed by adding ۴... to the *Past Stem*.

خریده	bought.
آورده	brought.
کشته	killed.
دانسته	known.
ساخته	made.
دیده	seen.

This participle is also used as an adjective (see para. 70).

**65. Auxiliaries**

The following verbs, besides having their normal meanings, are also used as auxiliary verbs in the formation of compound tenses.

بودن	to be, present stem	باش
خواستن	to wish, present stem	خواه
شدن	to become, present stem	شو

All these are conjugated in the normal way. There are however two additional verbs used for the present tense of 'to be'.

(a)	آم...م	I am.	ایم...یم	we are.
	ای...ی	you are.	اید...ید	you are.
	آست...ست	he (she, it) is.	آند...ند	they are.

This is the only form used as an auxiliary in the conjugation of other verbs, and is generally enclitic, i.e. unstressed. Otherwise, it has the simple meaning of 'to be' and requires a complement. It may be written separately or joined to the preceding word, and must not be confused with the personal endings of the verb (see para. 48).

(B)	هستم	I am.	هستیم	we are.
	هستی	you are.	هستید	you are.
	هست	he (she, it) is.	هستند	they are.

This has rather the meaning of 'to exist', 'there is', etc., and requires no complement, while the regular Present Tense (میباشم, etc.) contains an element of doubt or futurity. Some interchange is also permissible for the sake of euphony or style.

The negative of both آم, etc., and هستم, etc., are formed as follows:

نیستم	I am not.	نیستیم	we are not.
نیستی	you are not.	نیستید	you are not.
نیست	he (she, it) is not.	نیستند	they are not.

## 66. Compound Tenses

The Compound Tenses fall into three groups, the *Perfect*, the *Future*, and the *Passive*.

(i) The *Perfect* Tenses are formed by combining the *Past Participle* with the appropriate tenses of بودن.

*Perfect* (Present tense of بودن):

خریده آم	I have bought.	خریده ایم	we have bought.
خریده ای	you have bought.	خریده اید	you have bought.
خریده است	he (she, it) has bought.	خریده اند	they have bought.

The prefix می is sometimes used with this tense, giving the sense of 'used to': میخریده اند they used to buy.

*Pluperfect* (Past tense of بودن):

خریده بودم	I had bought.	خریده بودیم	we had bought.
خریده بودی	you had bought.	خریده بودید	you had bought.
خریده بود	he (she, it) had bought.	خریده بودند	they had bought.

*Perfect Subjunctive* (Subjunctive of بودن):

خریده باشم (that) I may have bought.	خریده باشیم (that) we may have bought.
خریده باشی ... you may have bought.	خریده باشید ... you may have bought.
خریده باشد ... he (she, it) may have bought.	خریده باشند ... they may have bought.

Note that the Subjunctive of بودن never takes به.

(ii) The *Future* is formed by using the *Present Tense* of خواستن 'wish', without می, followed by the *Past Stem* (actually a shortened form of the *Infinitive*) of the verb

خواهم خرید I will buy.	خواهیم خرید we will buy.
خواهی خرید you shall buy.	خواهید خرید you shall buy.
خواهد خرید he (she, it) will buy.	خواهند خرید they will buy.

Note that the Future sense may also be expressed by the Present Tense [see para. 68(c)].

(iii) The *Passive Voice* is formed by using the *Past Participle* together with the complete conjugation of شدن.

خریده شد	it was bought.
خریده میشد	it was being bought.
خریده میشود	it is (being) bought.
خریده شود	... it may be bought.
خریده شو	be bought!
خریده شده است	it has been bought.
خریده شده بود	it had been bought.
خریده شده باشد	... it may have been bought.
خریده خواهد شد	it will be bought.

### 67. Negative Compound Tenses

The negative is formed, as in the simple tenses, by prefixing the particle *نه* to the complete verbal group.

نَخْرِيْدِه آم	I have not bought.
نَخْرِيْدِه بُوْدَم	I had not bought.
نَخْرِيْدِه باشَم	... I may not have bought.
نَخْوَاهَم خَرِيْد	I will not buy.

N.B. The negative forms *نيسَم*, etc. (para. 65) are *not* used in the conjugation of the verb.

In the case of the *Passive* conjugation, however, the Past Participle itself is not regarded for this purpose as part of the verbal group, the negative particle being prefixed only to the various parts of *شدن*.

خَرِيْدِه نَشُد	it was not bought.
خَرِيْدِه نَمِيْشُد	it was not being bought.
خَرِيْدِه نَمِيْشُوْد	it is not being bought.
خَرِيْدِه نَشُوْد	... it may not be bought.
خَرِيْدِه نَشُو	do not be bought!
خَرِيْدِه نَشُدِه اَسْت	it has not been bought.
خَرِيْدِه نَشُدِه بُوْد	it had not been bought.
خَرِيْدِه نَشُدِه باشَد	... it may not have been bought.
خَرِيْدِه نَخْوَاهَد شُد	it will not be bought.

### 68. Uses of the Tenses

(a) *Past*: a single completed action in the past.

رَفْت he went.

اَلآن رَفْت he has just gone (Amer. he just went).

(b) *Imperfect*: continuous, indefinite or repeated action in the past.

مِيْرَفْت he was going, he used to go.

In certain cases (see paras. 76, 85) it is used to express a past action that did not in fact take place.

(c) *Present*: generally used of action going on at the time of speaking,

میرود he is going,

but also of habitual action

هرروز میرود he goes every day,

and of action in the future

فردا بيشهر میروم I am going to town tomorrow.

(d) *Present Subjunctive*: used for dependent verbs in the construction of various types of complex sentence (see Lessons x-xii).

N.B. The *Present Subjunctive* must not be used to render expressions like 'I might go', 'I should go', 'I would like to go', etc. These will be dealt with in para. 75.

(e) *Imperative* and *Jussive*: a simple command, permission or prohibition.

برو! go!      برود! let him go!      نرو! don't go!

نرود don't let him go! (lit. 'let him not go!').

(f) *Perfect*: a single action in the past the effects of which are still continuing or are still felt.

رفته است he has gone (and is not back yet).

(g) *Pluperfect*: a past action related to another past but later action (mainly used in or in conjunction with Subordinate Clauses, see Lessons x-xii).

رفته بود he had gone.

(h) *Perfect Subjunctive*: mainly confined to subordinate clauses (see (d) above and Lessons x-xii).

(i) *Future*: used to express the future where the Present (see (c) above) would not be sufficiently explicit.

خواهد رفت he will go.

## 69. The Passive

The use of the Passive is generally avoided when any other alternative is possible.

(i) If the doer of the action is expressed, the Active must be used, though the grammatical object may be given the prominence that the Passive gives it in English by bringing it to the beginning of the sentence.

سَگ را حَسَن زَدَ the dog was beaten by Hasan (lit. Hasan beat the dog).

(ii) If the doer of the action is indefinite or unknown, the impersonal 3rd person *plural* may be used.

سَگ را زَدَنَد the dog was beaten.

(iii) Only where no human or active agent is involved may the Passive be legitimately used.

بِسَبَبِ بَرَفِ رَاهِ بَسْتِه شُد because of the snow the road was closed.

## 70. Non-finite Forms

(a) *Past Participle*. In addition to its conjugational use it is frequently found as an adjective, *active* when formed from an intransitive verb, *passive* when from a transitive verb.

سَالِ گُذَشْتِه last year (گُذَشْتَن to pass).

پَنَجَرَه شِکَسْتِه the broken window (شِکَسْتَن to break).

It may also be used independently as a noun :

گُفْتِه‌هایِ عَلِی the sayings of Ali (گُفْتَن to say).

A syntactical use in the construction of complex sentences will be discussed in para. 74.

(b) *Infinitive*. This is used purely as a verbal noun, and cannot be subordinated to a main verb as in English (constructions of this type must be expressed in Persian as subordinate clauses, see para. 75).

The subject or object of an Infinitive verbal noun is linked to it by the *ezafe* construction. In this and all other respects it is treated as an ordinary noun, and may take the suffixes, such as the plural, associated with nouns.

اَمَدَن حَسَن Hasan's coming.

خُورَدَنِ آبِ the drinking of water.

آبِ خُورَدَن water for drinking, drink-  
ing-water.

بَعْدَ از رَفْتَنِ رِضَا مَاهَم مَتَرِل رَفْتِم after Reza's departure (lit.  
going), we too went  
home.

دِیدَتَش مُشْکِلِ آسْت to see him is difficult.  
رَاسْت نَگُفْتَن گُناه اسْت not to tell the truth (lit.  
true) is a sin.

See also para. 86 for another use of the Infinitive.

(c) *Past Stem* (shortened infinitive): used to form the Future with the Present Tense of خواستن (see para. 66 above), and also after certain impersonal verbs (see para. 76).

(d) Other verbal formations will be discussed in para. 99.

## 71. Irregular Usages

(i) Reference has already been made (para. 65) to the two irregular *Present Tenses* of the verb بودَن — ام, ای, است, etc., and هستی, هستم, هست, etc. The following peculiarities of this verb should also be noted.

(a) The prefix می... is rarely, if ever, used with the Past Stem. In other words, there is no distinction between the *Past* and *Imperfect*, both being rendered by بودَم, etc.

(b) The prefix به... is never used with the *Subjunctive* or *Jussive*.

باشم (that) I may be.

(ii) The following peculiarities are found in the verb داشتن.

The prefixes می... and به... are not used with any of the tenses as a general rule. Thus the *Past* and *Imperfect* are the same, and also the *Present* and *Present Subjunctive*. To avoid confusion in the latter case, the *Perfect Subjunctive* is commonly used in place of the *Present Subjunctive*.

دارَم instead داشته باشم

However, the prefix **می** may often be used when **داشتن** is the verbal element in a compound verb (see para. 72). This exception does not apply to **به**.

## 72. Compound Verbs

One of the most characteristic features of the Persian verbal system is the use of compound verbs. The number of simple verbs is comparatively limited, and the bulk of expressions which in English would be rendered by a simple verb are in Persian rendered by one of a number of common verbs, with the general sense of 'to make', 'to do', 'to have', etc., preceded by a qualifying or distinguishing word, normally a preposition, noun, adjective or adverb. Frequently the 'auxiliary' verb loses much of its normal sense, cf. the use of **خوردن** in the examples under (a) and (d) below. The following are a few examples:

### (a) With Preposition

<b>بَر</b> up, on.	<b>بَر خوردن</b> meet (by chance).
	<b>بَر داشتن</b> pick up.
	<b>بَر گشتن</b> return.
<b>دَر</b> in. <sup>1</sup>	<b>دَر آمیختن</b> mix in, associate.
	<b>دَر آمدن</b> come in (rare; contrast <b>دَر آمدن</b> , with opposite meaning, in (d) below).

### (b) With Adverb

<b>باز</b> again, back.	<b>باز کردن</b> open.
	<b>باز گشتن</b> return.
	<b>باز گفتن</b> repeat.
<b>پیش</b> forward, in front.	<b>پیش رفتن</b> progress.
<b>پس</b> behind, back.	<b>پس دادن</b> give back.

<sup>1</sup> Not to be confused with **دَر** = door (see (d) below).



## (c) With Adjective

تَنگ	narrow, tight.	تَنگ کردن	tighten.
بیدار	awake.	بیدار کردن	waken.
		بیدار شدن	awake (intrans.).
بُلند	tall.	بُلند کردن	raise, erect.
سوار	mounted.	سوار کردن	mount (trans.).
		سوار شدن	mount (intrans.).
بیرون	outside.	بیرون کردن	expel.
پائین	below.	پائین آوردن	lower.
وارد	entering.	وارد شدن	enter, arrive in.

## (d) With Noun

دَر	door.	دَر آمدن	come out.
		دَر آوردن	bring out.
صَبَر	patience.	صَبَر کردن	wait.
دوست	friend.	دوست داشتن	like, love.
إِجازه	permission.	إِجازه دادن	allow.
نِگاه	look, glance.	نِگاه کردن	look at.
		نِگاه داشتن	keep, stop.
نِشان	sign.	نِشان دادن	show.
سَرما	cold.	سَرما خوردن	catch cold.
زَمین	ground.	زَمین خوردن	fall.
حَرَف	word.	حَرَف زدن	speak.
یاد	memory.	یاد کردن	remember.
		یاد دادن	teach.

The following points are to be noted:

(i) While the non-verbal element is regarded as an integral part of the whole expression, it is separate from the verbal conjugation, and the

verbal prefixes, etc., are inserted before the verb itself. However, the prefix به is generally omitted.

بَر نَگَشت	he did not return.
پیش نَمِروَم	I am not progressing.
بُلَند می‌کردند	they were raising.
صَبَر خواهَم کرد	I will wait.
صَبَر کُنَد	let him wait.
نِشان داده آند	they have shown.

(ii) Apart from this, the verbal expression is treated as though it were a single unit, taking a direct object with را... where appropriate, and so on.

کَمَرَبَندِ خُود را تَنگ کرد	he tightened his belt.
مُحَمَّد را بیدار کرد	he wakened Mohammed.

Often, when the non-verbal element is an adjective or a noun, a pronominal suffix may be attached to it as the direct object, or even the indirect object.

بیرونش کرد	he expelled him (= او را بیرون کرد).
تَنگش کرد	he tightened it (= آنرا تنگ کرد).
یادَت داد	he taught (to) you (= یتو یاد داد).

This is a somewhat colloquial usage. More literary is the practice of linking the indirect object to the non-verbal element by the *ezāfe* construction. This is commonly done when the compound verb is an *intransitive* verb formed from a simple verb and an adjective:

سوارِ آسب شد	he mounted (on) the horse.
واردِ تِهْران شد	he arrived in Tehran.

It is sometimes also found when the compound verb is a *transitive* verb formed from a simple verb and a verbal noun.

إِجازة رَفَتَن داد	he gave permission to go.
--------------------	---------------------------

A prepositional phrase may also follow the compound element:

یاد از وطنِ عزیزِ خود میکرد he was recalling his dear homeland.

(iii) The stress tends to pass from the verbal prefix to the non-verbal element of the verbal expression.

Among the commoner 'auxiliary' verbs used in the formation of compound verbs are: *کردَن*, to do (often used colloquially in preference to any other); *داشتَن*, to have; *گشتَن*, to turn, become; *شدَن*, to become; *دادَن*, to give; *نمودَن*, to show; *خوردَن*, to eat; *زدَن*, to strike; *کشیدن*, to pull; *دیدَن*, to see.

*شدَن* and *گشتَن* are commonly used as the passive or intransitive forms of *کردَن*, *نمودَن*, etc., when these occur as part of compound transitive verbs.

It will be seen that often, where in English the verb is the basic form and the noun is formed from it, in Persian the reverse is the case.

إخراج	expulsion.	إخراج کردن	expel.
تشویق	encouragement.	تشویق کردن	encourage.
شکایت	complaint.	شکایت کردن	complain.

In other cases the use of the auxiliary verb with an adjective corresponds to the English causative suffix *-en*.

تَنَگ	tight.
تَنَگ کردن	tighten.

### 73. Intonation Patterns

The stress and high pitch falls on the non-verbal part of a compound verb, even when this comes at or near the beginning of the sentence. Where it is widely separated from its verb, there may be a secondary stress on the word immediately preceding the verb.

Para. 69:

ˆ	-	ˆ	-	ˆ	-
sag̃ra		hasan	zad		
-	-	ˆ	-	ˆ	-
besababe	barf		rah	baste	sod

Para. 70:

baʔd az raftane reza || ma ham manzel raftim  
 didanaš || moškel ast  
 rast nagoftan || gonah ast

Para. 72:

sabr xaham kard  
 kāmārbande xodrā || tang kard  
 birunaš kard  
 varede tehran šod  
 yad az vatane azize xod || mikard

## EXERCISES

A. Translate into English:

مِلَّتِ ایرانِ بَشِیْهَادَتِ تَارِیْخِ از سُرْعَتِ حَرَکَتِ هَرگِزِ مَحْرُومِ  
 نَبُودِه آسْت. رَاهِیْ شَاهِیْ هَخَامَنْشِیَانِ اَوَّلِیْنِ رَاهِیْ طَوْلَانِیْ جَهَانِ  
 مُتَمَدَّنْ بُوْد. اِیْنِ رَاهِیْ اُرُوپَا رَا بَا اَسِیَا مُتَّصِلْ سَاخْت. اَمَّا بِطَوْرِ  
 کُلِّیْ دَرِ سَابِقِ مُسَافَرَتِ بَیْنِ نُقَاطِ دُور دَسْتِ اِیْرَانِ بَرایِ عَامَّةِ  
 مَرْدُمِ اَزِ یَکِ تا دو مَاهِ طَوَّلِ کَشِید. اِمْرُوزِ رَاهِیْ مُتَعَدَّدْ سَاخْتِ  
 شُدْ وَشُوسِه‌هَیْ دَرَجَهْ اَوَّلِ کُوه‌هَارَا شِکَاْفَهْ آسْت. مُهِمَّتَرِیْنِ  
 وَسَایِلِ جَدِیدِ مُسَافَرَتِ دَرِ اِیْرَانِ کُنُونِ خَطِّ سَرَنَاسَرِیْ رَاهِ آهَنِ  
 اِیْرَانَسْت. مُسَافَرَتِ هَوَائِیْ هَمِ دَرِ تَمَامِ نُقَاطِ کِشُورِ مُیَسَّرْ آسْت.

B. Translate into Persian:

After the death of Alexander the Greek, his empire fell to pieces. In course of time a new Persian dynasty seized the reins of the affairs of the country. This dynasty was known as (by the name of) the Parthians, or

Ashkanians. Their capital was in the north of Persia. They fought[for] long years with the Romans, but neither (no) one of (from) the two sides gained a decisive victory. Also commercial and cultural relations between the two empires were many during the reign of the Parthians. Persian life came (became) very much under the influence of Greek culture. The Christian religion gained importance in Persia, and the Persian religion of Mithra became prevalent in the Roman Empire. Nearly six hundred years after the death of Alexander, the Parthian empire was overthrown by Ardashir Papakan (use Active construction), (a) one of the chieftains of the south of Persia. He founded the Sasanid dynasty, and made Persia a great empire once again.

### VOCABULARY

nation	مِلَّت	highway	شوسه
evidence	شِهَادَت	grade	دَرَجَه
speed	سُرْعَت	penetrate	شِكَافْتَن
deprived	مَحْرُوم	means	(pl. وَسَائِل) وسيله
royal	شاهي	present-day	كُنُونِي
first	أَوَّلِين	line	خَطّ
long	طولانی	end-to-end	سَرْتَاَسَرِي
world	جَهَان	railway	راه آهن
Europe	أُروپَا	Transiranian	سَرْتَاَسَرِي ايرَان
join	مُتَّصِل سَاخْتَن (ساز)	aerial	هَوَائِي
in general	بِطَوْرِ كُلِّي	country	كِشُور
past, former	سَابِق (a. or n.)	possible	مُمْكَِن
point	(pl. نُقَاط) نقطه	death	وَقَات
distant	دُور دَسْت	empire	إِمْبِرَاتُورِي
generality	عَامَه	fall to pieces	بِهَم خُورْدَن
month	مَاه	course	مُرُور
last (v.)	طُول كَشِيدَن	time	زَمَان
numerous	مُتَعَدَّد	reins	زِمَام

affair (pl. اُمُور)	influence نفوذ
Parthian (pl. پارتها)	culture فرهنگ
Ashkanian آشکانی	Greek یونانی
capital پایتخت	Christian مسیحی
north شمال	importance اهمیت
fight جنگ کردن	Mithra میترا
long years سالیان دراز	prevalent شایع
two sides طرفین	six hundred [see paras. ششصد (iii), 88]
victory پیروزی	overthrow سرنگون کردن
decisive قاطع	Ardashir اردشیر
gain (victory) یافتن (یاب)	Papakan پاپکان
relation (pl. روابط)	chieftain سالار
commercial تجارتی	south جنوب
cultural فرهنگی	Sasanid ساسانی
reign سلطنت	found (v.) تأسیس کردن
life زندگی	once again بار دیگر

## LESSON X

### Complex Sentences (Co-ordinate, Subordinate).

#### Impersonal Verbs. Temporal Clauses

#### 74. Co-ordinate Sentences

The simplest form of complex sentence is that in which a number of propositions are linked together by a conjunction such as 'and', 'but', 'or', etc. (see para. 62 above).

نوکَر آمد و در را باز کرد	The servant came and opened the door.
مَنزِلَم در شهر است، ولی مال شما در بیلاق است	My house is in the city, but yours is in the country.

یا کار خود را خوب کنید، یا منزل  
بروید Either do your work well, or go  
home.

When the actions follow one another in time, the conjunction may often be omitted.

رَفْتَم گوشت خریدم I went [and] bought some meat.

The following idiomatic construction, which is used to emphasize the *continuous action* aspect of the *Present* and *Imperfect*, is an offshoot of the above usage.

دارم آب میخورم I am drinking water (lit. I have,  
I am drinking water).  
داشتم گوشت میخریدم I was buying meat (lit. I had, I was  
buying meat).

In a sequence of actions by the same subject (occasionally also by different subjects) all the finite verbs but the last may be replaced by the Past Participle. The conjunction 'and' is optional in this case.

حَسَن بَشَهَر آمده (و) بَسینا رفت Hasan came to town and went to  
the cinema.

This construction may be used even when the time of the actions is in the future.

فردا بَشَهَر رفته (و) گوشت خواهم  
خرید Tomorrow I shall go to the town  
and buy some meat.

When compound verbs are used, the verbal element of all but the last may be omitted, the element in the last verb being taken to apply to all. This practice is permissible even when different verbal elements would be required for each compound verb in the sentence, or even when the last verb is not compound.

حَسَن واردِ اطاق (شده) و خیل  
عَصَبانی شد Hasan entered the room and  
became very angry.

حسن واردِ اطاق (شده) و صدا زد Hasan entered the room and called  
out.

حسن واردِ اطاق (شده) و شام خورد Hasan entered the room and ate  
supper.

Similarly the verb 'to be' may be omitted except in the *first* or *last* of a series of parallel sentences.

در تهران خیابانها پهن، عمارتها بلند، و مغازه ها متعدّد است. In Tehran the streets are wide, the houses tall, and the shops numerous.

## 75. Subordinate Sentences

When the second action is in some way dependent on the first, or arising out of it, as a result of a wish, purpose, command, obligation, remembering, forgetting, fear, decision, request, etc., the two clauses may be placed in juxtaposition as in para. 74, without a conjunction, and the subordinate verb is put in the Subjunctive. It is important to note that the Infinitive can *never* be used for this type of construction.

بِشَهَرِ مِیروَم گوشتِ بِخَرَمِ I am going to the town to buy meat (lit. . . [that] I may buy meat).

مِیخواهَم مَنزِلِ بِرَوَمِ I wish to go home.

مِیلِ دارَم با او آشنا شَوَمِ I would like to become acquainted with him.

أَمید دارم شما را زود ببینَمِ I hope to see you soon.

The tense of the subordinate verb is (in all types of subordinate sentence) related to the time of the main action; that is to say, if the subordinate action is subsequent to the main action, the subordinate verb is put in the *Present*, whatever the tense of the main verb may be.

بِشَهَرِ رَفَتَم گوشتِ بِخَرَمِ I went to the town to buy meat (lit. I went to the town [that] I may buy meat).

نَمِیتوانِستَم مِیهاخانَه خوبِی پیدا کُنَمِ I was unable to find a good hotel.

بِاو اَمَر داد دَفتر را بیاوَرَدِ He ordered him to bring the account book.

آز او خواهِش کَرَدَنَد اُطاق را تَرک کُنَدِ They asked him to leave the room.



## 76. Impersonal Verbs

A number of impersonal verbs and expressions with the sense of obligation, possibility, and so on, are followed by the *Subjunctive*. The commonest include the defective verb *بایستن*, 'to be necessary', which is only found in current Persian in the 3rd Person Singular of the *Present* and *Past* Tenses (both without prefix): *باید* 'it is necessary'; *بایست* 'it was necessary'; and phrases like *مُمکن است* *میشود*, 'it is possible'; *کافی است*, 'it is sufficient'; *قرار شد (میشود)*, 'it was (is) agreed'. All these expressions may also be used in the past tense.

باید هرچه زودتر بروید	You must go at once (lit. it is necessary [that] you may go as quickly as possible).
آیا مُمکن است (میشود) فردا بیایید؟	Is it possible for you to come tomorrow?
قرار شد اینجا بمانیم	It was agreed that we stay here.
خوب بود اینجا زندگی کنید	It was good for you to live here.
نبایست بیاید	He ought not to have come.

Sometimes, by putting the subordinate verb in the *Imperfect* (see also para. 85 for the use of the Imperfect to express a past action that did not in fact take place), the idea is conveyed of an action that might or should have been carried out, but was not.

باید آن مرد را میدیدید	You should have seen that man.
خوب بود اینجا زندگی میکردید	It would have been good for you to live here.

Certain adverbial expressions may take the place of the main verb.

کاش (کاشکه) این را میدیدید	Would that you had seen this!
----------------------------	-------------------------------

When *بایست* is used to introduce a clause of this kind, it generally carries the otherwise obsolete Imperfect verbal suffix *ی . . .* *بایستی* (not to be confused with the 2nd Person Singular).

بایستی بروم	I ought to have gone (but I didn't).
-------------	--------------------------------------

If it is desired to express a general obligation, possibility, etc., in which the subordinate verb has no subject, the *Past Stem* (shortened infinitive) is used instead of the *Present Subjunctive*.

باید رفت	One ought to go.
بایست گفت	One had to say, it had to be said.
بایستی گفت	One ought to have said (but didn't).
ممکن است (میشود) رفت	It is possible to go.

The verb *توانستن* 'to be able' may also be used in this impersonal construction, in which case it loses its personal ending in the *Present Tense*.

میتوان رفت	It is possible to go.
میتوانست گفت	It was possible to say.

#### Contrast

میتواند برود	He can go.
میتوانست بگوید	He could have said.

The defective verb *شاید* (lit. 'it is suitable') has virtually lost its verbal identity, and is generally used as a simple adverb with the meaning 'perhaps'.

شاید فردا میروم	Perhaps I will go tomorrow.
شاید آنجا نبود	Perhaps he was not there.

If, however, it is desired to emphasize the uncertainty of the action, the *Subjunctive* (*Present* or *Perfect*) may be used. This usage is also applicable to adverbs or adverbial expressions of similar meaning with no verbal element.

شاید آنجا نباشد	Perhaps he will (lit. may) not be there.
بِخِیَالَمِ آنجا نباشد	I imagine (lit. in my imagination) he will not be there.
بلکه بمیرد	Perhaps he will (lit. may) die.

### 77. The Conjunction که

With the exception of those governed by an Impersonal Verb and using the Shortened Infinitive (para. 76), most of the above subordinate clauses may be linked to the main sentence by the conjunction که 'that' without any other change.

بِشهرِ میروم که گوشتِ بخرم	I am going to the town to buy meat.
خوب بود که اینجا زندگی کنید	It was good for you to live here.
باو امر داد که دفتر را بیاورد	He ordered him to bring the account book.
از او خواهش کردند که اتاق را ترک کند	They asked him to leave the room.

The conjunction که has a very wide range of uses. In general it serves to indicate a dependent relationship between a sentence, phrase, or single word, and a subordinate clause. It can never by itself begin a sentence.

### 78. Indirect Statements

Clauses dependent on verbs such as 'say, think, believe, feel, agree, know, ask', etc., are introduced by the conjunction که, and frequently remain in the same form as in the direct speech, that is to say, neither person nor tense of the verb are changed.

گفت که بِشهرِ میروم	He said that he was going to the town (lit. . . .that I am going to the town).
---------------------	--

Alternatively, the person may be changed (to the 3rd), but *not* the tense (see para. 75).

گفت که بِشهرِ میروَد	He said that he was going to the town (lit. . . .that he is going to the town).
----------------------	---

Further examples:

آیا میدانید که این صحیح است یا نه؟	Do you know whether this is true or not?
خیال میکنم که اشتباه کرده اید	I think that you have made a mistake.

- پُرسید که چَطُور میتوانم بیازار  
برسم  
سؤال کرد که این کتاب را کُجا پیدا  
کردی  
تَعَجُّب میکردم که این مرد کُجا  
و چطور زندگی میکند
- He asked how he could reach the bazaar.  
He asked where he found this book (lit. . . .that—this book where did you find?).  
I wondered where and how this man lived.

Frequently the verb 'to say' may be omitted and implied in the conjunction:

- نَوَکَر آمد که آریابم اینجا نیست
- The servant came to say that his master was not there (lit. the servant came that my master is not here).

## 79. Temporal and other Dependent Clauses

The conjunction که is also used to introduce what are really main sentences set in a point of time or place, a cause, etc., this being determined by the grammatical main sentence.

Time:

- عَصَر بود که واردِ شَهر شدیم
- It was evening when (lit. that) we reached the city.
- مُدَّتی است که شما را ندیدم
- It is a [long] time since I have seen you (lit. that I have not seen you).
- روزی در شَهر بودم که باحَسَن  
بَر خوردم
- I was in the town one day when I ran into Hasan.

Place:

- در اصفَهان بود که دَفْعَه اوّل آن  
شَخَص را دیدم
- It was in Isfahan that I first saw that person.

Cause:

- طَوَری شکایت کرد که ناچار اِورا  
اِخراج کردند
- He complained so much (lit. [in] a manner) that they were obliged to discharge him (lit. necessarily they dismissed him).



Para. 75:

bešahr miravam || gušt bexaram .  
 meil daram baʔu || ašna šavam  
 namitavānestam || mehmānxāneye xubi peida konam  
 beʔu amr dad || daftarra beyavarad  
 az u xaheš kardand || otaqra tark konad

Para. 76:

bayad harce zudtar beravid  
 āya momken ast || farda beyaʔid?  
 xub bud || inja zandagi konid  
 bayad an mardra mididid  
 kaš(ke) inra mididid  
 šayad farda miravam

Para. 78:

goft ke || besahr miravam  
 āya midanid ke || in sahih ast ya na  
 xeyal mikonam ke || eštebah kardeʔid  
 porsid ke || cetour mitavanam || bebazar berasam  
 suʔal kard ke || in ketabra || koja peida kardi  
 taʔajjob mikardam ke || in mard || koja va cetour  
 zandagi mikonad

Para. 79:

<sup>ˆ</sup>asr <sup>-</sup>bud <sup>-</sup>ke || <sup>-</sup>varede <sup>ˆ</sup>šahr <sup>-</sup>šodim  
<sup>ˆ</sup>touri <sup>-</sup>šekayat <sup>-</sup>kard <sup>-</sup>ke || <sup>-</sup>nacar || <sup>ˆ</sup>ura <sup>-</sup>exraj <sup>-</sup>kardand  
<sup>-</sup>mesle <sup>ˆ</sup>in <sup>-</sup>bud <sup>-</sup>ke || <sup>-</sup>hargez <sup>ˆ</sup>nayamad  
<sup>ˆ</sup>in <sup>-</sup>tanab || <sup>-</sup>anqadr <sup>-</sup>mohkam <sup>-</sup>nist <sup>-</sup>ke || <sup>ˆ</sup>an <sup>-</sup>barra <sup>-</sup>bekašad

## EXERCISES

A. Translate into English:

آب و هوای ایران

ایران در منطقه معتدل شمالی قرار دارد و بدین سبب آب و هوای آن بطور کلی معتدل است، اما بعین کوههای بلند و گسترده و صحراهای پهن‌آور و مجاورت دریاها، انواع گوناگون آب و هوای معتدل در آن میبینیم. در کناره‌های دریای مازندران آب و هوا معتدل، در صحرای داخلی گرم و خشک، در کوهستانها سرد، و در کناره‌های جنوب بسیار گرم است. بارانی‌ترین جای ایران کناره‌های دریای مازندران، و خشک‌ترین ناحیه آن کویر لوت است.

B. Translate into Persian:

In the history of Persia its climate has had much influence. In the prehistoric period it is said that the central plateau was a great internal sea, and men first lived in caves in the mountains. Gradually the sea became dry, and its shores turned into rich farm-lands. But in the course of time the land became even dryer, and already by (until) the Middle Ages a great part of the country was desert. In these districts farming could only be carried out by means of irrigation, and that is still the greatest problem in Persia at the present time. Important new irrigation schemes are being carried out north of Tehran, near Isfahan, on the Safidrud (White River) in Gilan, and in other parts of the country.

## VOCABULARY

zone منطقه	Lut لوت
temperate مُعتدل	prehistoric قَبْلَ از تاریخ
northern شَمَالی	plateau فلات
be situated قِرار داشتن	cave غار
climate آب و هوا	gradually رفته رفته
widespread گسترده	turn into ... گشتن (گرد-)
desert صحرا	rich (fertile) حاصلخیز
extensive پهناور	farm-land (pl. مزارِع)
nearness مُجاوَرَت	even هَم
sea دریا	already هَم اکنون
kind, sort (pl. اَنواع)	Middle Ages قُرُونِ وُسْطَى <sup>1</sup>
various گوناگون	desert بیابان
shore کِناره	farming زراعت
Mazandaran مازنداران	carry out اجرا کردن
rainy بارانی	irrigation آبیاری
internal داخلی	problem مُشکِل
mountainous area کوهستان	scheme طرح
district (pl. نواحی)	Safidrud سفیدرود
salt desert کَویر	Gilan گیلان

## LESSON XI

## Complex Sentences (cont.) (Relative Clauses)

## 80. Relative Clauses

The term 'Relative Clause' is used here to describe a range of complex sentences, only one group of which may be rendered in English by clauses introduced by the pronouns 'who, which', etc.

<sup>1</sup> See para. 57 (note).



(a) Temporal

In these sentences the time of the whole complex is determined by the verb of the main sentence. The verb of the subordinate clause, which is introduced by a noun (not necessarily the subject), adverb, adjective, etc., followed by *که*, is therefore normally in the past, and indicates an action or circumstance arising before the action of the main verb.

کارمان که تمام شد منزل رفتیم	When our work was finished, we went home (lit. our work that it was finished . . .).
کارمان که تمام شد منزل میرویم	When our work is finished, we will go home.
زمستان که آمد سرد میشود	When winter comes, it will be cold (lit. winter that it came . . .).
نزدیک که علی آمد اورا شناختم	When Ali came near, I recognized him (lit. near that Ali came . . .).
سوار اتوبوس که شدیم رضا را دیدیم	When we had boarded the bus, we saw Reza (lit. mounted on the bus that we became . . .).

The last two sentences could also be rendered, with a slight change of emphasis, as follows:

علی که نزدیک آمد اورا شناختم	When Ali came near, I recognized him (lit. Ali that he came near . . .).
ما که سوار اتوبوس شدیم رضا را دیدیم	When we had boarded the bus, we saw Reza (lit. we that we became mounted on the bus . . .).

In these last examples the emphasis is on the doers of the action rather than the place or circumstances.

شما که باین زودی میروید (or رفتید) کمی برمیگردید؟	Now that you are going (lit. You, that you are going) so soon, when will you return?
از سخنان این اشخاص که فریفته شد، تقاضاهایشان را قبول کرد	Because he was deceived by the words of these people he accepted their demands.

(b) Appositional

These are similar to the last three examples, but there is no time element involved. Often the main verb may precede the subordinate clause.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| این مرد که دوست من میباشد شما را<br>راهنمایی خواهد کرد<br>آقای دُکتر که امروز نیامد اینجا<br>نیست<br>پیر مردی با زن و بچه وارد شد که<br>تمام لباسش پاره شد<br>حسن عموی داشت که دو سال بود<br>زنش در گذشته است | This man, who is my friend (lit. that he is my friend), will guide you.<br>The doctor is not here, for he did not come today.<br>An old man with a wife and child came in, all of whose clothes were torn (lit. that all his clothes were torn).<br>Hasan had an uncle whose wife had passed away two years previously (lit. . . . that it was two years his wife has passed away). |
|---|---|

(c) Selective or Determinative

The following examples come nearest to the Relative Clause as understood in English, in that the clause selects or in some way determines one unit or a group from a general class. There is, however, no relative pronoun in Persian, and the construction is similar to that in (b) above, with two important distinctions:

- (i) The antecedent is identified by the addition of the suffix *ی* . . . (not to be confused with the Indefinite suffix). This suffix is unstressed. (For rules governing its orthography after nouns ending in a vowel see para. 39 A(ii).)
- (ii) The conjunction *که* must follow the antecedent immediately, only the particle *را* . . . being interpolated when this is required. This is the main feature, other than the context, that enables the *selective* relative clause to be distinguished from the *appositional*, when the antecedent to the latter is an indefinite noun with the indefinite suffix *ی* (see the last two examples in (b) above).

In all cases the subordinate clause must contain a pronoun, expressed or implied, referring back to the antecedent. This of course is frequently the subject of the subordinate verb, and therefore not expressed separately; it may also be omitted where there is no possible ambiguity, for instance, when it is the direct object of the subordinate verb.

The following table sets out the different types of Selective Relative Clause that may occur:

Main sentence	Relative Clause	Pronoun	Conj.	...ra	Suffix	Antecedent
اینجاست	دیروز آمد	[او]	که	—	ی	مرد { A1
	دیروز دیدید	(او را)				
	هدیه دادید	بِاو				
امروز دیدم	دیروز آمد	[او]	که	را	ی	مرد { B1
	دیروز دیدید	(او را)				
	هدیه دادید	بِاو				
حرف زدَم	دیروز آمد	[او]	که	—	ی	بامرد { C1
	دیروز دیدید	(او را)				
	هدیه دادید	بِاو				

In the first group the Antecedent is the *subject* of the *main verb*, in the second the *direct object*, and in the third the *indirect object*. Similarly in each group the three examples show the antecedent as subject, direct object, and indirect object of the *subordinate verb*. In all cases it will be seen that the subordinate clause is in such a form that it could stand by itself without alteration.

Translation:

A 1. The man	who came yesterday	is here
(lit. that	[he] came yesterday)	
2. The man	whom you saw yesterday	is here
(lit. that	you saw (him) yesterday)	
3. The man	to whom you gave a present	is here
(lit. that	you gave to him a present)	
B 1. The man	who came yesterday	I saw today
2. The man	whom you saw yesterday	I saw today
3. The man	to whom you gave a present	I saw today
C 1. With the man	who came yesterday	I spoke
2. With the man	whom you saw yesterday	I spoke
3. With the man	to whom you gave a present	I spoke

In addition to the omission of the pronoun in the subordinate clause, already referred to, idiomatic usages also often occur when the antecedent

has one status in the main sentence and another in the subordinate clause. In such cases the influence of the subordinate clause, coming first, may out-balance that of the main sentence.

(i) In example B 1, where the antecedent is the object of the main sentence but the subject of the subordinate clause, the particle *را* . . . may be omitted.

مَرَدی که دیروز آمد امروز دیدم

(ii) In example A 2, where the antecedent is the subject of the main sentence but the object of the subordinate clause, the pronoun in the subordinate clause is omitted, but the particle *را* . . . is transferred to the antecedent itself, even though this is not permitted by the structure of the main sentence.

مَرَدی را که دیروز دیدید اینجا است

A similar usage occurs more rarely in example A 3.

بِمَرَدی که هدیه دادید اینجا است

In normal practice this last only happens when there is a considerable separation between the antecedent and the main verb.

با اولین کسی که گفتگو کردیم شخصِ کَدخُدا بود

The first person with whom we spoke was the headman himself (lit. With the first person that we spoke, he was the person of the headman).

The antecedent may be qualified by an adverb or adjective, especially a superlative or adjective of quantity.

تنها کسی که اینجا بود من بودم      The only person (who was) here was I.

بهترین چیزیکه در مَتَرِلِ من است      The best thing (that is) in my house is this carpet.  
این قالی است

تمامِ کارگرانیکه اِعْتِصاب کردند      All the workers who were on strike returned today.  
امروز برگشتند

In the following construction the verb 'to be' is inserted between the antecedent and the conjunction.

تھا کسی است کہ بآن مملکت رفتہ  
است      He is the only person who has been  
to that country.

بہترین کتابی است کہ تا بحال  
خواندم      It is the best book that I have read  
up to now.

### 81. Adverbial Conjunctions

A modification of the Relative construction is used in the formation of a large number of adverbial and prepositional expressions that serve as conjunctions of time, place, purpose, cause, etc. The following are a few examples. In each case the expression consists of a noun (often governed by a preposition) bearing the suffix ی . . . and followed by the conjunction کہ .

Time:	وَقْتِیکَ	when (lit. at the time that).
	تا وَقْتِیکَ	as long as (lit. until the time that).
	آز وَقْتِیکَ	since (lit. from the time that).
	دَر حَالِیکَ	while (lit. in the condition that).
Locative:	(دَر) جَائِیکَ	where.
Causal:	آز آنجائِیکَ	because (lit. from that place that).
Concessive:	در حَالِیکَ	whereas (lit. in the condition that).
	با وُجُودِیکَ	in spite of the fact that (lit. with the existence that).

Comparative:  
تا حَدِّیکَ، بَطَوْرِیکَ، هِمَا نَطَوْرِیکَ      to the extent that, just as.

Consecutive:  
تا حَدِّیکَ، بَطَوْرِیکَ      so that, to such an extent that (with subjunctive).

#### Examples:

وَقْتِیکَ رَسِیدَم دَر بَسْتِہ شُد      When I arrived, the door was closed.  
از وَقْتِیکَ آمَد خِیَلِ سَرَدِ اسْت      Since he came, it has been very cold.

در جائیکه شهر بود فقط بیابان است	Where the city was, there is only desert.
همانطوریکه گفتند رفتار میکرد	He acted just as they had said.
از آنجائیکه خسته بود رفت خوابید	Because he was tired, he went to bed (lit. he went, slept).
با وجودیکه گرسنه بود کار خود را تمام کرد	Although he was hungry, he finished his work.
کفشهای خود را واکس کرد بطوریکه برق میزد	He polished his shoes so that they shone.

Sometimes the **که** may be separated from the noun or prepositional phrase.

وقتی لیوان را بزمین گذاشت که یک قطره آب در آن نبود	He [only] put down (lit. on the ground) the glass when there was not a drop of water in it.
---	---

Another way of expressing the comparative idea involves the use of the compound conjunction **از بسکه**, 'inasmuch as' (lit. from enough that).

از بسکه فریاد زد مردم خسته شدند	He shouted so much that (lit. inasmuch as he shouted) people became tired.
---------------------------------	--

## 82. Prepositional Conjunctions

Subordinate clauses may be introduced by prepositions through the interpolation of the pronouns **این** or **آن** and the conjunction **که**.

Time:	پیش (قبل) از آنکه	before.
	پس (بعد) از آنکه	after.
	در ضمن اینکه	while (lit. in the contents of this that).
	تا اینکه	until, as long as.
Purpose:	برای اینکه	in order that (with Subjunctive).
Comparison:	مثل اینکه	as if.
	چنانکه (چون آنکه)	just as.

Cause:	بِعَلَّتِ اینکه	because.
Concessive:	بَا (وَجُودِ) اینکه	although.
	مَکَرِ اینکه	unless.
Consecutive:	تا اینکه	so that (with Subjunctive).

*Examples:*

بَعْدَ از آنکه حسن رفته بود مُحَمَّد وارد شد      After Hasan had gone, Mohammad entered.

بِرَایِ اینکه اِشْتَبَاهُ نَشُودَ در دَفْتَرِ نَوِشْت      In order that there might be no mistake, he wrote (it) in the register.

از اُطَاقِ خَارِجِ شَدِ مِثْلِ اینکه او را نَشِنِید      He went out of the room as if he had not heard him.

بِعَلَّتِ اینکه هَوَایِسیما دیر آمد نَمِیَتَوَانِیست در جَلَسَه شِرْکَتِ کُنَد      Because the plane was late, he was unable to take part in the meeting.

بَا اینکه سَخْتِ باران بود فَوْرًا راه اُفْتَاد      Although it was raining hard, he started out at once.

سَخْتِ کار میكَرد تا اینکه از اِمْتِحَانِ خُوبِ گُذَرَد      He worked hard so as to pass the examination well (verb in the Subjunctive because the action was not completed at the time of the main action).

چُنَانِکِه مِیْنِیدِ اِینِ اُطَاقِ بَزُرْگَترِ اسْت      As you see, this room is larger.

Comparative sentences may also be formed by using the comparative adjective and *آز* followed by *آن که*.

اِینِ دَرَسِ آسانترِ آزِ آنِ اسْتِ که تَصَوُّرِ کردید      This lesson is easier than (that that) you imagined.

او باهوشترِ آزِ آنِ اسْتِ که اِینِ حَکایتِ را باوَرِ کُنَد      He is too clever to believe (cleverer than that that he would believe) this story.

Other expressions using *این* or *آن* and *که* include:

*همین که، همانکه، همین طور که* just when, at that same time as.

*چندانکه* as long as, as much as.

*و حال آنکه* whereas.

When the action in the subordinate clause is earlier in time than that of the main clause, the subordinate verb is put in the Past or Pluperfect, even though the time of both actions relative to the speaker may be future. Similarly, when the subordinate action is later in time than the main action, the subordinate verb will normally be in the Subjunctive, even though both actions may be past relative to the speaker.

*بعد از آنکه حسن رفت، من هم خواهم رفت* After Hasan goes, I too will go.

*قبل از آنکه برسد، کار تمام شد* Before he arrived, the work was finished.

Subordinate clauses introduced by a compound conjunction are generally placed before the main clause. Thus the choice lies between a subordinate clause introduced by a compound conjunction and (generally) *preceding* the main clause (paras. 81, 82), and one introduced by a simple *که* and following the main clause (para. 79). This choice may perhaps best be clarified by saying that *که* implies some undefined relationship between the two clauses. Where the context of the clauses makes the relationship clear, *که* is sufficient (though a more complex conjunctive expression may of course be used if desired); where there is a possibility of ambiguity, a conjunction specifying the relationship should be employed.

Thus:

*زمستان که آمد سرد میشود* When winter comes, it will be cold.  
means much the same as:

*وقتیکه زمستان آمد سرد میشود*

But

*گرسنه که بود کار خود را تمام کرد*

could mean: When he was hungry, he finished his work.

or: Because he was hungry, . . .

or even: Although he was hungry, . . .



On the other hand there is no ambiguity about

با وجودیکه گرسنه بود کار خود را تمام کرد

which can only mean: Although he was hungry, he finished his work.

### 83. Pronominal Conjunctions

The pronouns این and آن may be used relatively with the conjunction که, and without the addition of the relative suffix ی . . .

آنکه بلندتر است پیش بیاید      Let him who is tallest come forward.

آنکه is generally used only for animate beings; for inanimate objects the correct expression is آنچه که, though the که is frequently omitted.

آنچه (که) در کتاب است راست است      What is in the book is true.

آنچه may take the suffix را . . . when it is the object of the main verb (and also idiomatically when it is the object of the subordinate verb, cf. para. 80(c) (ii)). In this case the conjunction که must be retained.

آنچه (را که) گفت راست است      What he said is true.

آنچه may also be used with prepositions and prepositional expressions.

با وجود آنچه گفت خواهیم رفت      In spite of what he said, I shall go.

The form چنانچه [which must not be confused with چنانکه (see para. 82)] is used to introduce a future or doubtful proposition, and has therefore acquired almost the meaning of 'if' (other conditional clauses are dealt with in para. 85).

چنانچه صلاح بدانید فردا حرکت میکنیم      If you think fit, we shall leave tomorrow.

#### 83a. Intonation Patterns

Sentences of the para. 80(a) and (b) types tend to have a secondary peak immediately before the که and a primary peak on the subordinate verb. In the Selective Relative Clauses (paras. 80 (c) and 81) there is a

secondary stress on the antecedent. A similar pattern is observable in para. 82.

Para. 80(a):

karamān ke tamam šod || manzel raftim  
 sevare otubus ke šodim || rezara didim  
 ma ke sevare otubus šodim || rezara didim  
 az soxanane in ašxas ke farifte šod || taqazahayašanra || qabul

kard

(b):

in mard || ke duste man mibašad || šomara rahnama?i xahad

kard

pire mardi || ba zan o bacce vared šod || ke tamame lebasaš ||

pare šod

hasan amu?i dašt || ke do sal bud || zanaš dar gozašte ast

(c):

mardike diruz amad || injast

Para. 81:

vaqtike rasidam || dar baste šod  
 dar ja?ike šahr bud || faqat biyaban ast  
 kafšhaye xodra vaks kard || betourike barq mizad  
 vaqti livanra bezamin gozašt ke || yak qatre ob || dar an nabud  
 in dars asantar az an ast ke || tasavvor kardid  
 in bahuštar az an ast ke || in hekayatra || bavar konad

## Para. 82:

baʔd az ʔn ke hasan rafte bud || mohammad vared šod  
 baraye inke ešebah našavad || dar daftar navešt  
 beʔellate inke havāpeima dir amad || namitavānest dar jalāse  
 šerkat konad  
 saxt kar kard ta inke || az emtehan xub gozarad  
 conanke mibinid || in otaq bozorgtar ast

## Para. 83:

anke bolandtar ast || piš beyayad  
 ance ke dar ketābast || rast ast  
 ba vojude ance goft || xaham raft  
 conance salah bedanid || farda harakat mikonam

## EXERCISES

## A. Translate into English:

## نجاتِ ماه

شَبِّ مَهتابی مُلا در چاه نگاه میکرد عکسِ ماه را در چاه دید.  
 فکر کرد که ثواب دارد ماه را از چاه نجات دهد. پس قلابی در چاه  
 انداخته چند دور گردانید. از قضا قلاب بستگ بُزُرگی در ته  
 چاه گیر کرد. مُلا خیلی سعی کرد آنرا بالا بکشد اما از جای خود تکان  
 نخورد. زیاد قوَّت کرد ریسمان پاره شد مُلا پشت افتاد. نگاه کرد  
 ماه را در آسمان دید گفت: عیب ندارد خیلی رنج کشیدم بِمَقْصَد  
 رسیده ماه را نجات دادم.

## B. Translate into Persian:

With the victory of Ardashir Papakan a new period began for Persia. The Zoroastrian faith was established once again as the national faith of Persia, and the government and the religious leaders worked sincerely together. As a result a strong centralized government was established, which encouraged feelings of patriotism and nationalism among the people. Among (from) the famous personalities of this period were Shapur I, who humbled the Roman Emperor Valerian; Shapur the Great, who reigned for seventy years and strengthened and expanded the empire; Nushirvan the Just, who revived the administration and codified laws; and the prophet Mani, who founded a religion that was rejected in Persia itself, but spread widely in Europe and central Asia.

## VOCABULARY

moonlit مهتابی

well چاه

look نگاه کردن

reflection عکس

think فکر کردن

that (conj.) که

spiritual reward ثواب

rescue نجات دادن

hook قلاب

throw انداختن (انداز)

turn (n.) دَوَر

spin (v.) گردانیدن

by chance از قضا

stone سنگ

bottom ته

get caught گیر کردن

try سعی کردن

move (intr.) تکان خوردن

force (v.) قوت کردن

cord ریسمان

break (intr.) پاره شدن

sky آسمان

never mind! عیب ندارد

take trouble رنج کشیدن

intention مقصد

arrive رسیدن

begin شروع کردن

Zoroastrian زردشتی

be established برقرار شدن

as برسم

government دولت

religious leader

(pl. روحانیین)

together باهم  
 work (v.) کار کردن  
 sincere صمیمانه  
 as a result در نتیجه  
 centralized متمرکز  
 encourage تشویق کردن  
 feeling (pl. احساسات) حِس  
 patriotism وطن دوستی  
 nationalism ملیت پرستی  
 personality شخصیت (شخصیتها pl.)  
 Shapur شاپور  
 emperor امپراتور  
 Valerian والریان  
 humble (v.) تحقیر کردن

seventy [see paras. 45 (iii), 88] هفتاد  
 reign (v.) سلطنت کردن  
 strengthen مُحکم کردن  
 expand توسیع دادَن  
 Nushirvan نوشیروان  
 just (adj.) عادل  
 administration حکومت  
 revive قوّت دادَن  
 law (pl. قوانین) قانون  
 codify تدوین کردن  
 Mani مانی  
 reject ردّ کردن  
 spread رواج یافتن  
 widely زیاد

## LESSON XII

### Complex Sentences (cont.)

#### (Indefinite Relative. Other Conjunctions. Conditional Sentences)

#### 84. Indefinite Relative Conjunctions

The word هر 'each' is used to form a variety of conjunctions from pronouns and other words, giving them the sense of the English '-ever'.

هرکسیکه، هر آنکه، هر که whoever.

هرآنچه (که)، هر چه (که) whatever.

The following do not take که

هرکس whoever.

هر کُدام	whichever
هر وقت، هرگاه	whenever.
هر جا، هر کُجا	wherever.
هر طور، هر قدر، هر چند	however.

هر چند often has the sense of 'although'.

Since such expressions are by their nature doubtful or indefinite, they are normally followed by the verb in the *Subjunctive*, unless it refers to an action that has already happened in relation to the main verb.

هر که باشد، میل دارم اورا ببینم	Whoever he is, I should like to see him.
هر که را آنجا دیدی بِمَنَزِلِ من بیاور	Bring anyone you see there to my house.
هر که (را) آنجا باشد (بود) بِمَنَزِلِ من بیاور	Bring anyone who is there to my house.
هر چه (را که) زیادی داشتند فروختند	Whatever they had in excess, they sold.
هر کدام از اینها را لازم داشته باشی بگیر	Take whichever of these you need.
هر وقت اینجا آمدید هوا بد است	Whenever you come here the weather is bad.
هر جا میرود با خوشحالی استقبال میکنند	Wherever he goes, he is welcomed with pleasure (lit. they (impers.) welcome [him] with pleasure).
هر چند اصرار کنی قبول نمیکم	However you insist, I shall not agree.
هر طوری بود، بهر طور بود، هر طور شده	somehow or other.

The use of هر چه with the comparative adjective has already been mentioned (para. 45 (i)). The following construction should be noted.

هر چه زودتر (باشد) (sc. خواهد بود)	the sooner the better.
------------------------------------	------------------------

### 84a. Other Conjunctions

A small number of words, mostly prepositional in origin, are commonly used as conjunctions without the interpolation of any other particle, though که may often be added.

(a) چون 'when'. In this sense it never takes the conjunction که.

چون داخلِ اطاق شد منظره غریبی دید      When he entered the room, he saw a strange sight.

(b) چرا (که)، چه (که)، زیرا (که)، چون (که).

All these may be used with or without که. چه generally only introduces a subordinate clause *following* the main clause.

چون در آن شهر آشنائی نداشت      Since he had no acquaintances in that town, he went to an hotel.  
بمهمانخانه رفت

کارم را تمام نکردم چه میخواستم تا آن بروم      I did not finish my work, because I wished to go to the theatre.

(c) The conjunction تا has a variety of allied meanings.

(i) 'as long as', 'as far as', 'as much as'.

تا اینجا هستید باید کمک کنید      As long as you are here, you must help.

تا چشم کار میکرد جز کوه و جنگل هیچ نبود      As far as the eye could see (lit. worked), there was nothing but mountain and forest.

تا بتوانی راست بگو      Tell the truth as far as you can.

(ii) 'as soon as', 'by the time that' (depending on the tense of the following verb).

تا اینجا برگشتید بشما نشان خواهم داد      As soon as you return here, I will show you.

تا حرکت کنید حاضر خواهیم شد      By the time you leave, we shall be ready.

(iii) 'until' (normally followed by the verb in the negative).

تا قبول نکردید هیچی نخواهم گفت      I shall say nothing until you agree.

(iv) 'in order that' (with verb in Subjunctive).

صبح زود حرکت کرد تا عصر برسد      He left early in the morning in order to arrive by evening.

تا is sometimes used in this sense after verbs of command, etc.

امرداد تا زود حرکت کند      He ordered him to set out early.

Often the subordinate verb is put in the Past Tense, in which case the two meanings under (iii) and (iv) are combined.

امرداد تا زود حرکت کرد      He ordered him to set out early (and he did).

(v) 'than' (in comparisons between two actions or verbal ideas).

با هوشترید تا یکچنین کاری بکنید      You are too sensible to do such a thing.

بہتر است اینجا بمانیم تا در این هوا بیرون رویم      It is better for us to stay here than to go out in this weather.

Often the second verb may be omitted.

رضا زرنگتر است تا محمد      Reza is cleverer than Mohammad (is).

با هواپیما زودتر میرسی تا با اتوبوس      You will get there sooner by plane than by bus.

## 85. Conditional Sentences

The protasis ('if' clause) in Conditional Sentences is introduced normally by the conjunction *اگر* (که) (with or without). The tenses of the verb in protasis and apodosis are determined by the nature of the condition, which may be possible or impossible. (For the use of *چنانچه* in a similar construction see para. 83.)

(a) *Possible*. The protasis verb is in the *Subjunctive* (*Present* or *Perfect*), the apodosis verb in the *Present* or *Future*.

اگر اجازه بدهید حالا میروم      If you permit, I will go now.

اگر بیاید بشما خبر میدهم      If he comes, I will tell you.

اگر هنوز نرفته باشد باو حرف میزنم      If he has not yet gone, I will speak to him.



When the protasis refers to an action completed before the action of the apodosis, the *Past Tense* may be used.

اگر آمد بشما خبر میدهم If he comes, I will tell you.

(b) *Impossible*. Both verbs are in the *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect* (cf. para. 76 for this use of the *Imperfect*).

اگر زودتر میرفتید او را میدیدید If you had gone sooner, you would have seen him.

اگر دانسته بودم هرگز قبول نمیکردم If I had known, I would never have agreed.

Conditional sentences may also be formed by using the *Subjunctive* or *Imperative* without an introductory conjunction, the main verb being in the *Indicative*.

راستش را بخواهی دیروز شهر نرفتم (If) you want the truth of it, I did not go to town yesterday.

آن کتاب را بمن بده دیگر چیزی آت نخواهم خواست Give me that book (i.e. if you give me that book), I shall not ask anything else from you.

In addition to the concessive conjunctions referred to in paras. 81, 82, 84, *آگرچه* 'although' is commonly used. The tense of the subordinate verb is *Indicative* or *Subjunctive* according to the degree of reality of the condition. The main clause is generally introduced by some such conjunction as *اما*, *ولی*, *بازهم*, etc., or by *هنوز* with a negative verb.

اگرچه عجله داشت اما در را با دقت قفل کرد Although he was in a hurry, (but) he locked the door carefully.

اگرچه اینجا یکسال کار کردم هنوز رئیس را ملاقات نکرده ام Although I have worked here for a year, (yet) I have not met the manager.

### 86. Use of the Infinitive

In its capacity as a verbal noun, the *Infinitive* may be used after verbs of beginning, etc., where the reference is to a general action without an expressed object. The *Infinitive* is governed by the preposition *به*.

شروع کرد بکار کردن He began to work.

but

شروع کرد در را رنگ کند He began to paint the door.

### 87. Logical and Grammatical Subjects

Frequently a complex sentence may open with a logical subject which in fact turns out not to be the same as the grammatical subject of the main verb. A simple example has already been given in Lesson VI (para. 40(ii)). Others are given here.

سربازانیکه در قلعه بودند وسایل  
نجات برای آنها نبود

There was no means of escape for the soldiers who were in the fort (lit. the soldiers who were in the fort, there was no means of escape for them).

حسن چون تک و تنه بود دوست  
ورقی نبود که اورا کمک کند

Since Hasan was alone, there was no friend and companion to help him (lit. Hasan, since he was alone, there was . . .).

منزلیکه آنجا میبینی صاحبش  
برادرزاده من است

The house that you see there belongs to my nephew (lit. the house that you see there, its owner is my nephew).

این مردم وقتیکه پاسبانان آمدند  
آوقاتشان تلخ شد

When the police came, these men became angry (lit. these men, when the police came, their times became bitter).

### 87a. Intonation Patterns

Conjunctions tend to attract a secondary stress (with high pitch).

Para 84:

harke bašad || meil daram ura bebinam  
harkera anja didi || bemanzele man beyavar  
har kodam az inhara lazem dari || begir  
har ja miravad || ba xošhalī esteqbal mikonand

Para. 84a:

cun daxelee otaq šod || manzareye qaribi did  
karam ra tamam nakardam || ce mixastam teʔatr beravam

ta cašm kar mikard || joz kuh o jangal hic nabud  
 ta inja bar gaštīd || bešoma nešan xaham dad  
 ta qabul nakardi || hici naxaham goft  
 bahuštārid ta || yakconin kar bekonid  
 behtar ast inja bemanim || ta dar in hava birun ravim  
 reza zarangtar ast ta || mohammad

agar ejaze bedehid || hala miravam  
 agar hanuz narafte bašad || beʔu harf mizanam  
 agar zudtar miraftid || ura mididid  
 rastešra bexahi || diruz šahr naraftam  
 an ketabra beman bedeh || digar cizi azat naxaham xāst  
 agarce ajale dašt || amma darra ba deqqat qofl kard

Para. 86:

šoru? kard bekar kardan

Para. 87:

sarbāzanike dar qalʔe budand || vāsāyele nejat baraye anha nabud  
 hasan cun tak o tanha bud || dust o rafiqi nabud ke ura || komak  
 konad  
 manzelike anja mibini || sahebaš baradarzadeye man ast

## EXERCISES

A. Translate into English:

عیدِ نوروز

جَمَشید یکی از پادشاهانِ قدیمِ داستانهای ایران بوده است. گویند پارچه بافتن و لباس دوختن و گندُم و جو کاشتن و خانه ساختن از سَنگ و گچ و گل را جمشید بمردم یاد داده است. روزی که جمشید بر تخت شاهی نشست مَرَدُم همه خوشحالی کردند، و آن روز را نوروز یعنی روزِ نو اسم گذاشتند، و ایرانیان تاکنون این روز را عید میگیرند. نوروز برای همه ایرانیان و بخصوص برای کودکان بهترین روزِ سال است. در این روز همه لباسِ نو میپوشند، بدیدنِ هم میروند، شادی میکنند، و بزرگتران بکودکان عیدی میدهند، یا برای آنان اسباب بازی میخرند.

B. Translate into Persian:

The Sasanid empire was still apparently at (in) the zenith of its power when it suddenly succumbed beneath the attack of the Arabs, who, under the influence of their new religion of Islam, poured out of the limits of Arabia during the first half of the seventh century A.D. Within a short time Persia's cultural life became submerged under a surface of Arabic religion, language and administration, even though in fact Persian ideas continually exercised (showed) much influence in the progress of Arabic and Islamic culture. For (In the space of) two centuries the whole of Persia was under the rule of Arabian caliphs, whose capital was first in Arabia, next in Syria, and finally in Iraq; during this time Islam, with its simple, popular ideas, came near to obliterating the old Zoroastrian faith.

## VOCABULARY

Jamshid جَمَشید

story داستان

cloth پارچه

weave بافتن

sew (دوز) دوختن

wheat گندُم

barley جو

plant کاشتن (کار)

plaster گچ

mud گِل

sit نِشِستَن (نِشِن)  
 New Year's Day نَوروز  
 name (v.) اِسْم گُذاشتَن  
 especially بِخُصُوص  
 child کودِک  
 wear (clothes) پوشیدَن  
 happiness شادی  
 New Year gift عیدی  
 toy اَسباب بازی  
 cause, article (pl. اَسباب) سَبَب  
 play بازی  
 apparently ظاهراً  
 zenith اَوَج  
 power قُدَرَت  
 suddenly ناگَاه  
 attack حَمَلَه  
 succumb مَغْلُوب گَشتَن  
 Arabs عَرَب  
 Islam اِسلام  
 limit (pl. حُدُود) حَدّ  
 Arabia عَرَبِستان  
 half (n.) نِیمه

seventh (see para. 88) هَفْتَم  
 A.D. میلادی  
 pour ریختَن (ریز)  
 pour out بیرون ریختَن  
 within, in the space of دَر ظَرْفِ  
 surface سَطَح  
 language زَبان  
 Arabic عَرَبی  
 be submerged غَرَق شُدَن  
 in fact دَر وَاقِع  
 continually دائِماً  
 progress تَرَقّی  
 Islamic اِسلامی  
 caliph (pl. خُلَفَا) خَلِیفَه  
 next (adv.) سِپَس  
 finally آخِر  
 simple سادَه  
 popular عَوام پَسَند  
 idea (pl. عَقاید) عَقِیدَه  
 come near to نَزْدِیک شُدَن  
 obliterate مَحُو کَرْدَن

## LESSON XIII

## Numerals. Time. Age. Dates

## 88. Cardinal Numbers

(a) The Cardinal Numbers are as follows:

(see para. 28) <b>يَكْ</b>	one.	<b>چهل</b>	forty.
(see para. 24) <b>دُو</b>	two.	<b>پنجاه</b>	fifty.
<b>سه</b>	three.	<b>شصت</b>	sixty.
<b>چهار</b>	four.	<b>هفتاد</b>	seventy.
<b>پنج</b>	five.	<b>هشتاد</b>	eighty.
<b>شش</b>	six.	<b>نود</b>	ninety.
<b>هفت</b>	seven.	<b>صد</b>	hundred.
<b>هشت</b>	eight.	<b>يَكْ صد</b>	one hundred.
<b>نه</b>	nine.	<b>دويست</b>	two hundred.
<b>ده</b>	ten.	<b>سيصد</b>	three hundred.
<b>يازده</b>	eleven.	<b>چهارصد</b>	four hundred.
<b>دوازده</b>	twelve.	<b>پانصد</b>	five hundred.
<b>سيزده</b>	thirteen.	<b>ششصد</b>	six hundred.
<b>چهارده</b>	fourteen.	<b>هفتصد</b>	seven hundred.
<b>پانزده</b>	fifteen.	<b>هشتصد</b>	eight hundred.
<b>شانزده</b>	sixteen.	<b>نُهصد</b>	nine hundred.
<b>هفده</b>	seventeen.	<b>هزار</b>	thousand.
<b>هجده</b>	eighteen.	<b>يَكْ هزار</b>	one thousand, etc.
<b>نوزده</b>	nineteen.	<b>كروَر</b>	five hundred thousand.
<b>بيست</b>	twenty.	<b>ميليون</b>	million.
<b>سي</b>	thirty.		

(b) Compound numerals are formed by linking the parts with the conjunction **وَ**, (usually pronounced 'o'), the largest numeral coming first.

بیست و یک	twenty-one.
هزار و نهصد و پنجاه و نه	1959.
سی و هفت هزار و دوست و هشتاد و هشت	37,288.

(c) The Cardinal Numbers normally serve as adjectives, and in conformity with the rule regarding adjectives of quantity and number (see para. 45) precede the noun they qualify, which follows in the singular.

سه مرد	three men.
ده کتاب	ten books.

The round numbers may also be used in the plural, the following noun however still being in the singular.

ده ها سب	tens (= English dozens) of apples.
صدها کتاب	hundreds of books.
هزارها درخت	thousands of trees.
هزاران بچه	thousands of children.

They may also be used in this way as nouns.

هزاران آمدند	thousands came.
--------------	-----------------

**یک** may be used as a noun with the addition of the indefinite suffix **ی** . . .

یکی گفت	someone said.
---------	---------------

Frequently a 'numerator' word is inserted between the numeral and its noun, with some such meaning as 'unit', 'person', etc. This does not add anything to the meaning, and is disappearing in the written language, though in colloquial Persian a few of the very long list of numerators are still commonly heard. The numerator stands as though it were an integral part of the numeral itself, and does not require *ezāfe*, nor affect the singular

form of the noun. The most usual are, for persons, نَفَر 'person', and تَن 'body'; and for things, تا 'fold' (except in the case of يَك which takes دانه 'grain').

سه نَفَر پاسبان three policemen.  
صد تا شتر a hundred camels.

The same construction is used with words that give some definition (size, weight, etc.) to the numeral, as well as with words expressing quantity or type in a more general way.

چهار كيلو گوشت four kilos of meat.  
دو ليوان آب two glasses of water.  
يك دست لباس one suit (lit. hand) of clothes.  
سه جفت كفش three pairs of shoes.  
شش نوع ميوه six kinds of fruit.

In some of these cases the normal *ezāfe* construction is also possible, in which case the container or measure becomes the main noun, qualified by the thing contained or measured, e.g.

يك ليوان آب a glassful (quantity) of water.  
but يك ليوان آب a glass for water, a drinking-glass.

## 89. The Figures

The figures are those from which the European figures are derived, and still bear some resemblance to them.

۱	۲	۳	۴	۵	۶	۷	۸	۹	۰
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0

These are written from left to right as in English.

۷۵ 75.  
۲۴۳ 243.  
۱۰۶ 106.



The letters of the alphabet are also used as numeral figures, mainly nowadays in the pagination of the introductory parts of books, the numbering of paragraphs, etc. (much as in English we use the small Roman numerals i, ii, etc.). Their values are as follows:

ا	ب	ج	د	ه	و	ز	ح	ط	ی	ک	ل	م	ن	س	ع	ف
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80

ص	ق	ر	ش	ت	ث	خ	ذ	ض	ظ	غ
90	100	200	300	400	500	600	700	800	900	1,000

ع 75.

ر 243.

ق 106.

For mnemonic purposes the letters as arranged above are grouped into threes and fours as under, forming imaginary words:

أَبْجَد (abjad) هَوَز (harvez) حُطَى (hotti)  
 كَلَمَن (kaleman) سَعَفَص (saʔfas) قَرِشَت (qarešat)  
 تَخَذَ (saxxaʔ) ضَطْنَع (ʔaʔʔeq)

From these are taken the word for *alphabet* أَبْجَد, and the distinguishing names of the two letters *he* (see paras. 8, 24).

## 90. Ordinal Numbers

The ordinal numbers are for the most part formed by adding the suffix م . . . to the cardinal numeral.

پَنْجَمُ fifth.

بِیْسْتُمُ twentieth.

چِهْل وِ یَكُمُ forty-first.

دَوِیْسْت وِ هَفْتَاد وِ هَشْتَمُ two hundred and seventy-eighth.

'First' is generally used in the Arabic form أَوَّل (though not in

compound numbers—see 'forty-first' above). 'Two' and 'three' are slightly modified in the ordinal form:

(pron. *doyom*) دُوِّم، دُوِّم second.

سِوَم، سِوَم third.

The ordinals are employed as normal adjectives, following the noun qualified in the *ezafe* construction.

مَرَدِ سِوَم the third man.

صَفِّ چَهَارْدَهَم the fourteenth row.

A 'superlative' form of the ordinal numerals, with the additional suffix *in* . . . , is used to indicate position in a series. As with the superlative adjectives (see para. 38), the numeral precedes the noun without *ezafe*.

بِیست وِسیوْمِینِ رُوزِ هَاه the twenty-third day of the month.

چَهَار صَد وِبیست وِهَفْتُمِینِ شُمارَةُ رُوزِ نَامِه the 427th issue of the newspaper.

اَوَّل may also take this suffix, and its opposite, اَخِرِین 'last', should also be noticed.

اَوَّلِینِ رُوزِ سَال the first day of the year.

اَخِرِینِ مَنَزِلِ خِیابان the last house in the street.

## 91. Fractions

Ordinal numbers are increasingly being used to represent the fractions.

دو سِوَم two-thirds.

چَهَار نُهَم four-ninths.

Alternatively, the Arabic forms of the fractions are commonly used:

نِصْف half.

رُبْع quarter.

ثُلُث third.

خُمْس fifth.

سُدُس	sixth.	عُشْر	tenth.
سُبُع	seventh.	دُو ثُلُث	two-thirds.
ثُمْن	eighth.	چَهَار تُسَع	four-ninths.
تُسَع	ninth.		

Another construction often found places the denominator first, followed by the numerator, both in the cardinal form. This is nowadays only used when the numerator is يَكْ.

سَه يَكْ one-third (lit. (of) three, one).

A modification of this construction is used to express percentages.

صَدِی پانزده fifteen per cent. (lit. (of) a hundred, fifteen).

The Persian word for 'half', نِیم, is used in combination with other numerals. It normally follows the noun governed, as do the other fractions, when combined with whole numbers.

سه مِتر و نِیم 3½ metres.  
دو سَاعَت و سه رُبُع 2¾ hours.

but سه رُبُع سَاعَت three-quarters of an hour.

## 92. Other Expressions of Number

يَكِي يَكِي one by one.

دوتا دوتا two by two, etc.

دو سه two or three, etc.

هر دو both.

هر سه all three, etc.

دو بار (دَفْعَه، مَرْتَبَه) twice, etc. (lit. two times).

دو مَرْتَبَه is also used in the sense of 'again'. Cf. also

دو باره again.

**93. Arithmetical Expressions**

Addition (جَمْع):

هفت و چهار میشوَد یازده (تا) seven and four make eleven.

Subtraction (تَفْرِیق):

سه از نه میشوَد (میانَد) شش (تا) three from nine make six.

Multiplication (ضَرْب):

پنج هفت تا میشوَد سی و پنج (تا) five times seven is thirty-five.

Division (تَقْسِیم):

ده تقسیم بر دو میشوَد پنج (تا) two into ten is five.

**94. Time**

ساعتِ چَند است؟ What is the time? (lit. the hour how much is it?).

ساعتِ چهار است It is four o'clock (lit. the hour of four).

ساعتِ چهار و نیم است It is half *past* four (lit. the hour of four and a half).ساعتِ چهار و پنج دقیقه است It is five minutes *past* four (lit. the hour of four and five minutes).ساعتِ چهار رُبْع کَم است It is a quarter *to* four (lit. the hour of four, a quarter less).ساعتِ چهار ده دقیقه کَم است It is ten *to* four (lit. the hour of four, ten minutes less).**95. Age**

چند سال دارید؟ How old are you? (lit. how many years have you?).

بیست سال دارم I am twenty years old (lit. I have twenty years).

Alternative expressions are to be found for all the examples in paras. 93-95, but those given are the commonest and simplest.

## 96. Dates

(a) The days of the week are as follows:

شنبه	Saturday.
یکشنبه	Sunday.
دوشنبه	Monday.
سه شنبه	Tuesday.
چهارشنبه	Wednesday.
پنجشنبه	Thursday.
جمعه	Friday (the day of rest, lit. of gathering).

The name of the day may precede the time of day without *ezāfe*, or follow it with *ezāfe*.

یکشنبه صبح، صبح یکشنبه	Sunday morning.
چهارشنبه ظهر، ظهر چهارشنبه	Wednesday noon.
پنجشنبه عصر، عصر پنجشنبه	Thursday afternoon.

The early part of the afternoon may be expressed by the phrase *بعد از ظهر*.

Great care must however be taken over the use of the word *شب* 'evening', since according to the *traditional* reckoning (no longer used officially, but common in everyday speech) the day begins at sunset, and the evening is therefore the first part of what we would regard as the *following* day (cf. English 'eve').

*شب جمعه* therefore means: *Thursday evening*.

But the modern usage is differentiated by using the qualifying word in the preceding position.

پنجشنبه شب	Thursday evening.
جمعه شب، شب جمعه	Friday evening.

(b) Although both the Moslem (lunar—*قمری*) and the Christian calendars are known in Persia, the generally accepted one is the old Persian reckoning modified to accord with the Moslem (*هجری*)

era, and officially introduced in 1924. The year is a solar (شمسی) one, reckoned from A.D. 622 (= سال ۱ هجری شمسی), and begins on approximately 21 March of each Christian year. The year 1339 began on 21 March 1960.

The Persian months are as follows (with approximate equivalents):

فروردین	31 days (21 Mar.–20 Apr.).
اردیبهشت	31 days (21 Apr.–21 May).
خرداد	31 days (22 May–21 June).
تیر	31 days (22 June–22 July).
مرداد	31 days (23 July–22 Aug.).
شهریور	31 days (23 Aug.–22 Sept.).
مهر	30 days (23 Sept.–22 Oct.).
آبان	30 days (23 Oct.–21 Nov.).
آذر	30 days (22 Nov.–21 Dec.).
دی	30 days (22 Dec.–20 Jan.).
بهمن	30 days (21 Jan.–19 Feb.).
اسفند	29 days (20 Feb.–20 Mar.).
	(30 days in a leap-year).

Leap years (سال کبیسه) occur every four years (except that every eighth leap year comes after an interval of five years—that is to say, a cycle of eight leap years takes 33 years instead of 32). Since the Persian leap years do not coincide with those of the Christian reckoning, there is periodically a shift of one day in the equivalent dates given above. Thus the Persian year *immediately following* the Persian leap year starts on 22 March (all subsequent dates in the same year being correspondingly affected), and at present this is corrected in the following year (back to 21 March) by the incidence of the Christian leap year.

Thus 1337 (leap year) began on 21 March 1958; 1338 began on 22 March 1959; 1339 began on 21 March 1960 (leap year).

The day of the month is expressed by the ordinal number, followed by the name of the month with *ezafe*. The name of the month may stand alone, or take the word ماه 'month' either preceding with *ezafe* or following without. The year is expressed by the word سال 'year' followed by the number with *ezafe*.

(روز) پَنَجَشنبه، بیست و هشتم Thursday, 28th Azar, 1336 A.H.S.  
 آذر (آذرماه، ماه آذر)، سال هزار و  
 سیصد و سی و شش هجری شمسی  
 = پَنَجشنبه، ۲۸ آذر ۱۳۳۶ ش.  
 ۳۶/۹/۲۸ =

For a table showing comparative Persian and Christian calendars, see p. 219.

#### 96a. Intonation Patterns

Para. 93:

haft o cahar || mišavad yazdah ta

Para. 94:

saʔat cand ast  
 saʔate cahar o nim ast

Para. 95:

cand sal darid  
 bist sal darām

#### EXERCISES

A. Translate into English:

روز سه شنبه ۱۴ مرداد ۱۳۳۷ عبارت جدید و مُجَلَّل فرودگاه  
 مِهْرآباد بدست مبارکِ اَعْلِيحَضَرَتِ هَمَايون شاهنشاهی گُشایش یافت.  
 بنای این عمارت، که در نوع خود در سراسر جهان کَم نظیر است،  
 از لحاظ حِفْظِ حَيَاثِيت کشور در انتظار خارجیان، که مُرْتَبّاً از این

فرودگاه مسافرت میکنند، و رفع احتیاجات روز، اقدام بسیار مهم و مفید بشمار میرود. وجود یک فرودگاه مجهز به دستگاه‌های کامل فنی متناسب با ترقی بزرگ هواپیمائی امروز موجب میشود که شرکت‌های بزرگ هواپیمائی جهان سعی کنند چنین فرودگاهی را در مسیر خطوط پروازی خود قرار دهند، و طبیعی است که از این لحاظ اولاً منافع زیادی عاید مملکت میشود، و ثانیاً در شناسائی تمدن کشور بمردم جهان بطور شایسته‌ای مؤثر افتد.

#### B. Translate into Persian:

Independent dynasties began to appear in Iran during the second and third centuries A.H. Among the most famous of those were the Samanids in Khorasan and Transoxania and the Buyids in central and south Persia. Famous Persian poets like Rudaki and Ferdousi made their name during this period. Towards the end (In the last parts) of the fourth century A.H. the powerful Turkish monarch, Mahmud of Ghazne, ruled in the east, and in the middle (parts) of the fifth century the whole country was occupied by the Seljuqs from central Asia. For (In) the next five-hundred-year period the same sequence of events is repeated; the appearance of small independent dynasties is interrupted by (means of) catastrophic invasions, among which must be mentioned that of the Mongols in the seventh century and of Tamerlane in the eighth century. In spite of this, it was during this time that Persia's loftiest achievements in literature and fine arts were manifested. But it was only in the beginning of the tenth century A.H. that a true Persian dynasty ruled once again over (on) the whole country.

#### VOCABULARY

Tuesday سه شنبه	Mehrabad مهرآباد
Mordad (name of month) مُرداد	blessed مَبَارَك
new جدید	majesty <sup>1</sup> اَعْلِيَّ حَضَرَت
splendid مُجَلَّل	imperial شاهنشاهی
airport فرودگاه	august هَمایون

<sup>1</sup> Pronounced a<sup>3</sup>lahazrat (see para. 57, note <sup>1</sup>).



be opened گشایش یافتن  
 construction بنا  
 kind نوع  
 exceptional کم نظیر  
 aspect لحاظ  
 preservation حفظ  
 qualities حیثیات  
 sight (pl. آظفار) نظر  
 foreign(er) خارجی  
 regularly مرتباً  
 travel مسافرت کردن  
 removal (i.e. satisfaction) رفع  
 needs احتیاجات  
 step, advance اقدام  
 useful مفید  
 important مهم  
 be reckoned بشمار رفتن  
 existence وجود  
 equipped مجهز  
 apparatus دستگاه  
 complete کامل  
 technical فنی  
 appropriate متناسب  
 aeronautical هواپیمائی  
 cause موجب  
 company شرکت  
 course, route مسیر

flying (adj.) پروازی  
 establish (i.e. include) قرار دادن  
 natural طبیعی  
 firstly اولاً  
 profit (pl. منافع) منفعت  
 accruing عاید  
 secondly ثانیاً  
 civilization تمدن  
 making known (trans. شناسائی  
 noun)  
 worthy شایسته  
 be effective مؤثر افتادن  
 independent مستقل  
 begin شروع کردن  
 A.H. هجری  
 appear ظهور یافتن  
 among مابین  
 second دوم  
 third سوم  
 Samanids آل سامان  
 Khorasan خراسان  
 Transoxania [see ماورای النهر  
 para. 108(a)]  
 Buyids آل بویه  
 poet (pl. شعرا) شاعر  
 like مثل  
 Rudaki رودکی  
 Ferdousi فردوسی

make one's name	شهرت یافتن	be repeated	تکرار شدن
fourth	چهارم	appearance	ظهور
Turkish	ترکی	be interrupted	قطع شدن
powerful	نیرومند	by means of	توسط
monarch	سلطان	catastrophic	مصیبت آور
Mahmud	محمود	mention	ذکر کردن
Ghazne	غزنه	Mongols, Moguls	مغول
east	شرق	Tamerlane	تیمور لنگ
middle parts	اواسط	eighth	هشتم
fifth	پنجم	in spite of	با وجود
occupy	إشغال کردن	lofty	عالی
Seljuq	سلجوق	achievement	شاهکار
five-hundred-year	پانصدساله	literature	آدبیات
(adj.)		fine arts	صنایع ظریفه
next	بعد	be manifested	بروز شدن
sequence	رشته	tenth	دهم
event	حادثه (pl. حوادث)		

## LESSON XIV

### Persian Word Formation

#### 97. Derivation of Words

The two lessons that follow are intended as a guide to the accumulation and expansion of vocabulary. Most of the words described may be found in a good dictionary, but ready recognition of some of the commoner compound types will assist the student to free himself from dependence on dictionaries and vocabularies.

In this chapter the Persian methods of forming words will be described, the Arabic methods being discussed in Lesson XV. Persian offers three main methods: prefixes (comparatively rare), suffixes, and juxtaposition. In all cases a basic word is qualified or defined by whatever is added.

**98. Prefixes**

The two most significant prefixes are نا 'un-' and هم 'co-'.

پاک	clean.	ناپاک	unclean, dirty.
[دان]	knowing	نادان	unknowing, ignorant.
(Pres. stem of دانستن).			
خوش	good, well.	ناخوش	unwell, ill.
وطن	country.	هموطن	compatriot.
راه	road.	همراه	together, companion.
کار	work.	همکار	colleague.

**99. Suffixes**

Certain suffixes are used very freely, others are limited to certain dictionary words. In general each is confined to the formation of either nouns or adjectives, but it must be remembered that the line between these two parts of speech is not very sharply drawn. All these suffixes, being an integral part of the word, take the final stress.

(a) ی . . . (i) affixed to adjectives and certain types of noun and adverb, to form abstract nouns.

خوب	good.	خوبی	goodness.
بزرگ	large.	بزرگی	largeness.
مرد	man.	مردی	manliness.
تنها	alone.	تنهایی	loneliness.
نجار	carpenter.	نجاری	carpentry.

When this ی . . . is suffixed to a word of Persian origin ending in ۴ . . . , the *he* is replaced by a *gaf*.

بچه	child.	بچگی	childhood.
-----	--------	------	------------

(ii) affixed to nouns to form relative adjectives.

ایران	Iran.	ایرانی	Iranian.
-------	-------	--------	----------

تِهْران	Tehran.	تِهْرانی	Tehrani.
آب	water.	آبی	(water-coloured), blue.
دِهات	villages, countryside.	دِهاتی	villager, peasant.
اینجا	here.	اینجائی	from these parts.

When suffixed to a word ending in ۴ . . ., this suffix is usually written as a separate particle, using the initial *alef* (contrast with (a) (i) above).

کِناره	coast.	کِنارهای	coastal.
--------	--------	----------	----------

But n.b. هفتگی 'weekly', from هفته 'week'.

خانگی 'domestic', from خانه 'house'.

Both these suffixes may be employed very freely, and can often be added to prepositional phrases, etc., e.g.

بی وفائی disloyalty (lit. without-loyalty-ness) (see para. 100 (c)).

(b) ۴ . . . (i) added to nouns to modify their meaning, often in the sense of a group.

دَسْت	hand.	دَسْتِه	handle, handful, group.
گوش	ear.	گوشِه	corner.
چشم	eye.	چشمِه	spring (water).
پنج	five.	پنجِه	hand (i.e. five fingers).
هفت	seven.	هفتِه	week (i.e. seven days).

(ii) added to a group consisting of a numeral, a pronominal adjective or similar word, and a noun to form an adjective or noun.

دَه سال	ten years.	دَه سالِه	ten years old.
دو چرخ	two wheels.	دو چرخِه	bicycle.
چهار مُتور	four engines.	چهار مُتورِه	four-engined (plane, etc.).
چه کار	what work?	چیکاره	of what occupation?
همه کار	all work.	همه کاره و هیچکاره	Jack of all trades.
هیچ کار	no work.		

(c) انه . . . added to nouns and adjectives applicable to persons to form adjectives applicable to actions or objects.

عاقِل	intelligent.	کارِ عاقلانَه	an intelligent action.
اُستاد	master.	اُستادانَه	masterly.
شاعرِ	poet.	شاعرانَه	poetical.
بچه	child.	بچهگانَه	childish.

This ending is often exclusively adverbial in use:

خوشبختانَه	luckily.
متأسفانَه	unfortunately, regrettably.

(d) The next six suffixes may only be used with Persian verbal stems.

ش . . . added to the Present Stem to form a Verbal Noun.

خواستن	wish, Pres. Stem.	خواه :	خواهش	wish, request (noun).
کوشیدن	try, Pres. Stem.	کوش :	کوشش	effort.

(e) نده . . . added to the Present Stem to form the Agent ; also used as a descriptive adjective.

نمودن	show, Pres. Stem.	نما :	نماینده	representative.
نوشتن	write, Pres. Stem.	نویس :	نویسنده	writer.
آمدن	come, Pres. Stem.	آ :	آینده	coming, future.

(f) ان . . . added to the Present Stem to form an adjective describing a temporary condition.

سوختن	burn, Pres. Stem.	سوز :	سوزان	burning.
لرزیدن	tremble, Pres. Stem.	لرز :	لرزان	trembling.

(g) ا . . . added to the Present Stem to form an adjective describing a permanent quality.

دانستن	know, Pres. Stem.	دان :	دانا	knowing, wise.
توانستن	be able, Pres. Stem.	توان :	توانا	powerful.

(h) *تی* . . . added to the Past Stem to form an adjective (or noun) expressing necessary, desirable or future action.

رفتن	go.	رفتنی	about to go.
خریدن	buy.	خریدنی	worth buying.
دیدن	see.	دیدنی	worth seeing.
گفتن	say.	گفتنی	that has to be said.

(i) *ار* . . . added to the Past Stem to form an abstract noun (sometimes also an adjective or an agent <sup>1</sup>).

رفتن	go.	رفتار	way of going, conduct.
گرفتن	take.	گرفتار	occupied, victim.
خریدن	buy.	خریدار	customer.

The remaining suffixes are added to nouns to form adjectives or nouns.

(j) *بان* . . . , *چی* . . . , *کار* . . . , *گار* . . . , *گر* . . . added to nouns (occasionally verbal stems) to describe occupations.

کار	work.	کارگر	worker.
آموختن	teach, Pres. Stem.	آموزگار	teacher.
خدمت	service.	خدمتکار	servant, employee.
طیاره	aeroplane.	طیاره چی	pilot (somewhat colloquial).
باغ	garden.	باغبان	gardener.

(k) *دان* . . . added to nouns to describe containers, etc.

قلم	pen.	قلمدان	pen-case.
نمک	salt.	نمکدان	salt-cellar.

(l) *ستان* . . . added to nouns to form nouns of place.

گل	rose.	گلستان	rose-garden.
آفغان	Afghan.	آفغانستان	Afghanistan.
بیمار	sick.	بیمارستان	hospital.

<sup>1</sup> This was actually the original use.

(m) كُ . . . , چَ . . . added to nouns to form diminutives, sometimes with modification of meaning.

دُخترَ	girl.	دُخترَكُ	little girl.
كِتابَ	book.	كِتابِچَ	note-book.
صورتَ	face.	صورتَكُ	mask.
چشمَ	eye.	چشمَكُ	wink.

(n) مَندَ . . . , وَرَ . . . , وارَ . . . added to nouns to indicate the possession of a quality.

ثروتَ	wealth.	ثروتمندَ	rich.
کارَ	work.	کارمندَ	employee, member.
سخنَ	word.	سخنورَ	poet.
امیدَ	hope.	امیدوارَ	hopeful.

(o) ناکَ . . . , گینَ . . . added to nouns (generally abstract) to express possession of an unpleasant quality.

خطرَ	danger.	خطرناکَ	dangerous.
غمَ	sorrow.	غمگینَ	sorrowful.

(p) یَنَ . . . added to nouns (generally materials) to form adjectives.

آهنَ	iron (noun).	آهنینَ	iron (adj.).
سیمَ	silver (today more commonly 'wire').	سیمینَ	silver.
رنگَ	colour.	رنگینَ	coloured.
سنگَ	stone.	سنگینَ	heavy.

## 100. Juxtaposition

The bulk of the words formed in this category consist of a basic word (often of a general character), together with a qualifying word that normally precedes it.

(a) Noun, adjective, verbal stem qualifying or defining a noun of place, etc.

خانه	house.	مَرِيضْخَانِه	(sick-house)—hospital.
		کارخانه	(work-house)—factory.
گاه	place.	خوابگاه	(sleep-place)—bedroom.
		ایستگاه	(stopping-place)—station.
نامه	letter.	روزنامه	(day-letter)—newspaper.
		شِنَاسْنامِه	(knowing-letter)—identity card.

(b) Noun or adjective qualifying a noun to form an adjective.

خوشبو	sweet-smelling.
گُلرَنگ	rose-coloured.
سَنگدل	stony-hearted.
فارسی زَبان	Persian-speaking (lit. -tongued).
چهارپا	four-footed, quadruped.
حَسَن نام	Hasan by name.
گُم نام	unknown (lit. lost-name).

Sometimes two or more nouns may be used.

خوش قَد و بالا of good figure and stature, shapely.

(c) Preposition governing a noun (see para. 61).

باوفا	faithful.
بی انصاف	unjust.

(d) Noun, adjective, etc., defining a verbal Present Stem.

قالی فروش	carpet-seller.
ساعت ساز	watch-maker.
دُرُوغگو	(lie-teller), untruthful.



تُنْد نَوِیس	(quick-writer), stenographer.
خُشککن	(dry-making), blotting-paper.
حَق شِناس	(due-recognizing), grateful.
دوربین	(far-seeing), telescope, camera.

This is an extremely common and flexible method of forming words, and may be used extensively outside the strict limits of 'dictionary' words, as the following examples, taken from modern Persian writers, illustrate:

<u>مالِ مَرْدُم خُور</u>	profiteer (lit. money-of-people-eater).
<u>شرحِ حالِ اشخاصِ گُمَنامِ نویس</u> <sup>1</sup>	biographer of unknown persons (lit. story-of-life-of-unknown-persons-writer).
<u>مُوافَقَتَهایِ شوم و ایرانِ بَر بادِ ده</u> <sup>1</sup>	tragic treaties that destroy Persia (lit. tragic and Persia-to-the-wind-giving treaties).

Sometimes the verbal element is of a general character, serving almost as a suffix to the 'qualifying' word. Characteristic verbal stems of this type include:

آنگیز (to stir up)	آمیز (to mix).
آوردَن (to bring)	پَندیرُفَن (to receive).
سِحَر آمیز	(magic-mixing), magical, enchanting.
شور آنگیز	(excitement-arousing), exciting.
إمكان پَندیر	(possibility-receiving), possible.
وَحْشَتِ آوَر	(alarm-bringing), alarming.

(e) Noun, adjective, etc., defining a verbal Past Stem or Participle.

جَهان دیده	(world-seen), experienced.
شاهزاده	(king-born), prince.
خواب آلود(ه)	(sleep-stained), sleepy.

<sup>1</sup> I am indebted for these examples to Gilbert Lazard's *Grammaire du Persan Contemporain*.

(f) In a few cases, mainly verbal stems, the two parts are complementary rather than one qualifying the other.

جُسْتُجُو search.

گَفْتُگُو conversation.

آمَد و رَفَت coming and going, traffic.

خَرِید و فَرُوش buying and selling, trade.

(g) Many pairs of words linked by the ordinary *ezafe* construction have acquired the status of compound nouns, and may even take the plural ending after the qualifying word.

سِيبِ زَمِیْنِی potato (ground-apple) سِيبِ زَمِیْنِی ها potatoes.

گُلِ سُرُخ rose (red flower) گُلِ سُرُخها roses.

شَرَحِ حَال biography.

سُوءِ تَفَاهُْم misunderstanding.

سُوءِ ظَنّ distrust.

In a few cases the *ezafe* is omitted.

دُخْتَرِ عَمُو (daughter [of] uncle), cousin.

صاحبِ خان (owner [of] house), landlord, host.

صاحبِ دِل (owner [of] heart), romantic, sentimental.

### 101. Doubly Compound Words

Two or more of these methods may be combined.

قالی فروشی (قالی + فروش + ی) carpet-selling.

آهن‌گری (آهن + گر + ی) iron-working.

باور نکردنی (باور + نه + کرد + نی) unbelievable.

شکست ناپذیر (شکست + نا + پذیر) invincible.

مردانگی (مرد + انه + ی) manliness.

دیوانه وار (دیو + انه + وار) like a madman.

The above lists of suffixes and types of compound word are not intended to be exhaustive, but include only those most commonly encountered. The student will be able to accumulate additional examples for himself.

## 102. Derived Verbs

A considerable number of simple verbs may be formed from nouns by the addition of **یَدَن** . . . to form the *Infinitive*.

دُزد	thief.	دُزدیدن	steal.
نام	name.	نامیدن	name (verb).

This form is also used with nouns of Arabic and other foreign origin.

طَلَب	request (noun).	طَلَبیدن	request (verb).
(also طَلَب کردن)			

فَهِم	understanding.	فَهِمیدن	understand.
-------	----------------	----------	-------------

Causative verbs may be formed by adding **ان** . . . to the Present Stem of the Simple verb to form the new *Present Stem*. The corresponding *Infinitive* is formed regularly by adding **یَدَن** . . . or **دَن** . . .

رَسیدن	arrive.	رَساندن، رَسانیدن	cause to arrive, deliver.
فَهِمیدن	understand.	فَهِماندن	make to understand.

In some cases contractions take place.

رَفتن	go.	راندن	cause to go, drive
(for [رَواندن]).			
نِشَسْتَن	sit.	نِشانَدن	cause to sit, seat
(for [نِشِیناندن]).			

The *Present Stem* **گُذَر** (from **گُذَشْتَن**) 'pass' forms the Causative by inserting **ا** . . . in the second syllable. The normal form is also used, so that three versions of the verb exist.

(stem گُذَران)	گُذَراندن	make to pass, spend (time), etc.
(stem گُذار)	{ گُذاشتَن گُذارَدن }	make to pass, leave, put, allow.

## EXERCISES

## A. Translate into English:

ستاره «تیشتر» فیرشته باران بود. هُرمُزد چون از آفرینش جهان فراغت یافت، ستاره تیشتر را بآبیاری جهان گماشت تا از ابرباران بیارد و زمین را سیراب کند، و کشورهای آریائی را سبز و آباد نماید. آهریمن بدنیهاد، که دشمن نیکی و آبادی بود، چون خوبی جهان هُرمُزد را دید، خشمگین شد. «آپوش» دیو خشکی را برآن گماشت تا بادِ گرم بوزاند و زمینها را خشک کند. آنگاه ستاره تیشتر طلوع کرد و بسیاری هُرمُزد برخاست. نخست خود را بصورت جوانی پانزده ساله در آورد و مدت ده شبان روز در آسمان پرواز کرد و از ابرها باران بارید. سپس خود را بصورت گاوِ زَرین شاخ در آورد و ده شبان روز در آسمان پرواز کرد و از ابرها باران بارید. سیوم بار خود را بصورت اسب سفید در آورد و ده شبان روز در آسمان پرواز کرد و از ابرها باران بارید. قطرات باران هر یک بدرشتی یک پیاله بود. آب بقامت یک مرد بالا آمد و سراسر زمین را فراگرفت. جانوران زیانبخش همه هلاک شدند و در سوراخهای زمین فرو رفتند.

## B. Translate into Persian:

The Safavid dynasty was founded by Shah Esma'il, who ascended (sat on) the royal throne in 907 A.H. He and his successors united Persia into one empire, and established the Shi'a sect of Islam [as] the national religion of Persia; by this means they restored the unity of religion and state that had existed in the days of the Sasanids a thousand years earlier. The reign of the Safavids achieved its greatest glory in the age of Shah Abbas I, who was the contemporary of Queen Elizabeth of England, the Mogul emperor Akbar, and the Ottoman Sultan Soleiman. Isfahan, the capital, and other cities were adorned with beautiful mosques and palaces, literature and the fine arts were encouraged, and friendly relations were created with the great nations of Asia and Europe. The Safavid dynasty collapsed in the middle of the twelfth century A.H., and after an interval of anarchy and Afghan invasions, the throne was occupied by Nader Shah, who, in a short period of glory, expanded the Persian empire from the Caucasus to the river Indus. After his death the empire once

again broke up, though for thirty years Karim Khan Zand ruled a large part of the country from Shiraz. At (In) the beginning of the thirteenth century A.H., corresponding to the nineteenth century A.D., the Qajar chieftain Aqa Mohammad defeated his rivals, and placed his capital at (in) Tehran.

# VOCABULARY

star ستاره	blow (v. trans.) وزانیدن
Sirius تَشْتَر	then آنگاه
angel فرشته	rise (star) طلوع کردن
rain (n.) باران	help (n.) یاری
Hormozd هرمزد	rise up برخواستن
creation آفرینش	first نخست
finish فراغت یافتن از	form صورت
irrigation آبیاری	turn (trans.)... into درآوردن... به
appoint گماشتن (گمار)	period, interval مدت
cloud ابر	day and night شبان روز
rain (v. intr.) باریدن	fly (v.) پرواز کردن
soaked سیراب	bull, cow گاو
cultivated آباد	golden زرین
Ahriman اهریمن	horn شاخ
bad-natured بدذمه	horse اسب
enemy دشمن	white سفید
good نیک	drop (pl. قطرات) قطره
angry خشمگین	large درشت
demon دیو	cup پیاله
dry خشک	height قامت
wind باد	envelop (v.) فراگیرفتن
hot, warm گرم	animal جانور

harmful زیان‌بخش  
 be destroyed هَلَاک شدَن  
 hole سوراخ  
 go down فُرو رفتَن  
 Safavid صَفَوِی  
 Shah شاه  
 Esma'il إسماعیل  
 throne تَخْت  
 successor جانشین  
 unite مَتَّحِدَ کردن  
 sect مَذْهَب  
 Shi'a (adj.) شیعی  
 restore قِرارگذاشتَن  
 unity اِتِّحاد  
 state دَوْلَت  
 day (pl. آیام)  
 earlier قَبْل  
 exist وُجود داشتن  
 glory رَوْنَق  
 age عَصَر  
 achieve . . . نایل شدَن به  
 Abbas عَبَّاس  
 contemporary مُعاصِر  
 queen مَلِکَه  
 Elizabeth اِلِیزابِث  
 England اِنْگِلِسْتان  
 Akbar اکْبَر

sultan سُلطان  
 Ottoman عُثْمانی  
 Soleiman سُلَیمان  
 Isfahan اِصفَهان  
 palace کاخ  
 adorn آرایش دادن  
 encourage تشویق کردن  
 friendly دوستانه  
 create ایجاد نمودَن  
 collapse بِهَم خُوردَن  
 anarchy اِغْتِشاش  
 Afghan آفغان  
 occupy تَصَرُف کردن  
 Nader نادر  
 Caucasus قَفْقاز  
 Indus river رودِ سِند  
 Karim Khan Zand کَریم خان زَند  
 part قِسْمَت  
 Shiraz شیراز  
 beginning اِبْتِدا  
 corresponding to مُطابِق  
 nineteenth نوزدهم  
 Qajar قاجار  
 Aqa Mohammad آقا مُحَمَّد  
 rival (pl. رُقبا)  
 place (v.) گُذاشتَن (گذار)

## LESSON XV

## The Arabic Element in Persian

## 103. The Triliteral Root

Arabic grammar and syntax has not affected the structure of Persian to any great extent. But Arabic influence on Persian vocabulary has been enormous, and though spasmodic efforts have been made in recent years, both officially and by individual writers, to reduce the use of Arabic words, it is unlikely that any marked impression will be made on everyday usage, any more than it has been possible to eliminate Latin from English.

It will be necessary first of all to consider the peculiar method of word construction in Arabic—a method characteristic of all the Semitic languages. In the Indo-European languages (such as English and Persian), words are built up, by means of prefixes, suffixes, phonetic changes, etc., from roots which may at one time have existed in some form as words, but which have only rarely survived as such, and are of little practical value so far as the study of the modern language is concerned.

The Arabic root is exactly the opposite; it is purely theoretical (as will be seen, it consists entirely of consonants), but it is of the greatest grammatical importance. Once the root is isolated, a whole series of words, with fairly well-defined shades of meaning, may be formed from it according to precise 'mathematical' formulae.

The majority of Arabic words are formed from triliteral (three-consonant) roots; a few roots have four consonants, while in some cases only two have survived. To these three (or four) consonants are added vowels and often additional consonants; one of the original consonants may also be doubled. Thus from the basic root *k-t-b*, containing the idea of 'writing', may be derived:

<i>karaba</i>	he wrote.
<i>yakrubu</i>	he is writing.
<i>kitāb</i>	book.
<i>maktab</i>	office, school.
<i>makrūb</i>	letter.
<i>kitābat</i>	writing.
<i>kātib</i> , pl. <i>kuttāb</i>	writer, clerk.

as well as many other forms. Where one of the consonants is *w* (= *v* in Persian), *y*, or *hamze*, contraction may take place, and the root is not then always readily distinguishable; such contraction however conforms

to regular rules, and can generally be recognized without much difficulty, e.g.

*bannā* mason, for [*bannāy*], root *b-n-y* (build).

*idārat* department, administration, for [*idwārat*], root *d-w-r* (revolve).

Many of the formulae, for instance those making up the conjugation of the verb, are rarely found in Persian, while others are not governed by distinctive rules. The examples discussed in the following paragraphs, however, have sufficient regularity in use to make them helpful in the building of vocabulary. The Arabic origin of a word may often be determined by the fact that it contains one of the eight letters (see para. 31) that occur mainly or exclusively in Arabic words.

#### 104. The Formulae

The Arab and Persian grammarians at an early date adopted the three consonants ف, ع, ل (containing the basic idea of 'doing') as token consonants to describe the various formulae. Thus the word كِتَاب is said to be of the form فَعَال; مَكْتُوب of the form مَفْعُول; and so on. It must be understood that the formulae themselves do not necessarily or even normally have any meaning of their own.

#### 105. Noun Formulae

##### (a) The Broken Plural

By far the most important group of noun formulae is the Broken Plural. The majority of Arabic plurals are formed, not by the addition of a suffix, but by an internal change in the word (see para. 28), that is, by the use of another formula. There is generally no relationship between the formula used for the singular noun and that used for its plural, nor even consistency in the pairing of singular and plural formulae; while the same formula may be used in one instance for the singular, and in another for the plural.

كِتَاب book, pl. كُتُب.

رَجُل man, pl. رِجَال.

The correct use of the Arabic Broken Plural must, therefore, be



largely a matter of learning vocabulary; however, a few of the more distinctive forms are given below as a guide.

(i) فُعلُول:

حَدّ	limit	حُدُود
أمر	affair	أُمُور
مَلِك	king	مُلُوك

(ii) أفعال:

شَخْص	person	أَشْخَاص
صاحب	owner	أَصْحَاب
وَقْتُ	time	أَوَاقَات

(iii) فُعلُل:

كِتَاب	book	كُتُب
طَرِيق	road	طُرُق
مَدِينَة	city	مُدُن

(iv) فُعَلَا (particularly linked with the singular forms فَعِيل and فَاعِل):

رَئِيس	chief, director	رُؤَسَا
شَاعِر	poet	شُعَرَا
وَزِير	minister	وُزَرَا

(v) فَعَالِيل, فَعَالِل:

Formulae of this type are particularly common when the singular form consists of four or more letters (excluding the Arabic feminine suffix, see para. 108 (b)). The fourth letter may be: (1) an additional root letter, (2) a grammatical prefix such as م (see (b) and (c) below) or ل, (3) a long vowel.

*Four-letter singulars* use the plural form **فَعَالِيل**.

(1)

كَوَكَب star pl. كَوَاكِب (root ك و ك ب).

جَوَهِر jewel, ink pl. جَوَاهِر (root ج و ه ر).

(2)

مَسْجِد mosque pl. مَسَاجِد (root م س ج د).

أَكْبَر elder pl. أَكْبَر (root ك ب ر).

(3) When the fourth letter is a 'long' vowel, a **و** or **ى** is added in the plural form.

سَاحِل shore pl. سَوَاحِل (root س ح ل).

رَابِطَة connection pl. رَوَاطِط (root ر ب ط).

وَسِيلَة method pl. وَسَائِل (root و س ل).

*Five-letter singulars* use the plural form **فَعَالِيل**.

These forms are as above, with the addition of a 'long' vowel, usually in the last syllable.

قَانُون law pl. قَوَانِين (root ق ن ن).

مَكْتُوب letter pl. مَكَاتِب (root م ك ت ب).

أَحْدَاث news pl. أَحَادِيث<sup>1</sup> (root ح د ث).

(pl. of حَدَث novelty)

تَصْوِير illustration pl. تَصَاوِير (root ص و ر).

دُكَّان shop pl. دَكَّكِين (root د ك ك ن).

The Arabic Broken Plural is to some extent to be regarded as a collective noun rather than as a simple plural. For this reason it is quite common to find the regular Persian plural side by side with it, e.g. **کُتُب** and **کِتَابِهَا**.

<sup>1</sup> Generally used as plural of **حَدِيث**, religious tradition.

Many of these plurals are more common in Persian than the corresponding singular. In certain cases they are used with a singular meaning.

أَرَبَاب master (sing. رَبّ—Lord (God)).

In such cases the broken plural 'collective' may itself take a Persian plural ending, e.g.

أَرَبَابَهَا masters.

(b) Nouns of Place and Time

These normally have the prefix *ma-*.

مَتَر	house	(root ن ز ل alight).
مَدْرَسَه	school	(root س در س study).
مَوْقِع	occasion	(root ق و ق fall).

(c) Nouns of Instrument

These often have the prefix *me-*.

مِفْتَاح	key	(root ف ت ح open).
مِسْوَاك	toothbrush	(root س و ك rub).

(d) Trades and occupations have the form فَعَال.

نَقَّاش	painter	(root ن ق ش draw, engrave).
بَقَّال	grocer	(root ب ق ل grow (of plants)).
فَرَّاش	messenger	(root ف ر ش spread (carpet)).
نَجَّار	carpenter	(root ن ج ر hew (wood)).

### 106. Verb Formulae

The only parts of the Arabic verbal conjugation that affect Persian are the two Participles (Active and Passive) and the Verbal Noun. The situation is however complicated by the fact that from any given root up to sixteen different verbs may be formed according to set formulae, each giving a different shade of meaning. In practice only nine of these forms are common, and few if any roots are known to have all of them.

Before giving the distinctive forms of the participles and verbal nouns of each of these 'derived' verbs, a note is necessary on the general significance of each.

- I. The simple form of the verb.
- II. Intensive, sometimes causative.
- III. Attempt; reciprocity.
- IV. Causative.
- V. Reflexive of II; often passive in sense.
- VI. Reflexive of III.
- VII. Passive.
- VIII. Reflexive of I.
- X.<sup>1</sup> Reflexive of IV; asking, desiring, claiming.

It should be understood that these modifications of meaning cannot be taken to operate automatically. The above notes are intended only as a guide.

(a) Participles (A. = active; P. = passive.)

	<i>Form</i>	<i>Example</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Root</i>	<i>Root meaning</i>
I	A. فاعِل	شاعر	poet	ش ع ر	versify
	P. مفعول	مكتوب	letter	ك ت ب	write
II	A. مفعّل	مفتّش	inspector	ف ت ش	inspect
	P. مفعّل	مثلث	triangular	ث ل ث	three
III	A. مُفاعِل	مُعاون	assistant	ع و ن	help
	P. مُفاعِل	مُبارك	blessed	ب ر ك	lie down
IV	A. مفعّل	مُخبر	correspondent	خ ب ر	inform
	P. مفعّل	مُحكّم	strong	ح ك م	be wise, firm
V	A. مُتفعّل	مُتخصّص	expert	خ ص ص	be special
	P. مُتفعّل	مُترقّب	expected	ر ق ب	watch
VI	A. مُتفاعِل	مُتّحارب	belligerent	ح ر ب	fight
	P. مُتفاعِل	—	—	—	— <sup>2</sup>
VII	A. مُنفعّل	مُنعكس	reflected	ع ك س	reverse
	P. مُنفعّل	—	—	—	— <sup>2</sup>
VIII	A. مُنتعِل	مُنْتَظَر	awaiting	ن ظ ر	look

<sup>1</sup> Form IX is rare in Persian.

<sup>2</sup> The passive form is rare in these cases.

P.	مُتَنَظَّرٌ	awaited	ن ظ ر	look
X A.	مُسْتَعْمِلٌ	employee	خ د م	serve
P.	مُسْتَحْكَمٌ	solid	ح ك م	be wise, firm

It will be seen that in all but Form I, the only difference between the two Participles is the vowel-change in the last syllable.

(b) Verbal Noun

	Form	Example	Meaning	Root	Root meaning
I	Irregular	قَتَلَ	murder	ق ت ل	kill
		شَكَيْتُ	complaint	ش ك و	complain
		قَبُولٌ	acceptance	ق ب ل	accept
II	تَفْعِيلٌ	تَعْطِيلٌ	holiday	ع ط ل	be idle
III (a)	مُفَاعَلَةٌ	مُلاحَظَةٌ	consideration	ل ح ظ	look at
	(b) فِعَالٌ	وِصَالٌ	union, connection	و ص ل	join
IV	إِفْعَالٌ	إِخْرَاجٌ	expulsion	خ ر ج	go out
V	تَفْعُلٌ	تَصَوُّرٌ	imagination	ص و ر	shape
VI	تَفَاعُلٌ	تَصَادُفٌ	collision	ص د ف	meet
VII	إِنْفِعَالٌ	إِنْحِصَارٌ	monopoly	ح ص ر	surround
VIII	إِفْتِعَالٌ	إِسْتِثْبَاهٌ	mistake	ش ب ه	resemble
X	إِسْتِفْعَالٌ	إِسْتِمْعَالٌ	use	ع م ل	work

### 107. Irregular Forms

When one or more of the root letters is *hamze*, و or ی, contractions and changes may take place in these forms. A few examples will serve to illustrate the general effect of these.

Para. 105:

(a) أَيَّامٌ days, from يَوْمٌ day (root و م ی), for [أَيَّام].

أَبْنَاءٌ sons, from ابْنٌ son (root ب ن ی), for [أَبْنَاء].

مَبَانِيٌ principles, from مَبْنَى basis (root ب ن ی), for [مَبَانِي].

- (b) مَقَام position, from root ق و م stand, for [مَقَوْم].  
 (c) مِرَات mirror, from root ر أ ی see, for [مِرْأَیَة].  
 (d) بَنَّا mason, from root ب ن ی build, for [بَنَای].

Para. 106:

- (a) قاضی judge, for [قَاضِی] (root ق ض و decide).  
 مَبْنِی based, for [مَبْنِی] (root ب ن ی build).  
 مَخُوف frightened, for [مَخُوف] (root خ و ف fear).  
 مُدِير director, for [مُدِير] (root د و ر turn).  
 مُنْشِی clerk, for [مُنْشِی] (root ن ش ء grow, happen).  
 مُجَاز allowed, for [مُجَاز] (root ج و ز cross).  
 مُتَمَنِّی<sup>1</sup> requested, for [مُتَمَنِّی] (root م ن ی determine).  
 مُتَلَاشی decomposing, for [مُتَلَاشی] (root ل ش و become corrupt).  
 مُبْتَدِی beginner, for [مُبْتَدِی] (root ب د ء begin).  
 مُبْتَلَا afflicted, for [مُبْتَلَا] (root ب ل و afflict).  
 مُحْتَاج needed, for [مُحْتَاج] (root ح و ج need).  
 مُسْتَقِیم direct, for [مُسْتَقِیم] (root م ق و stand).  
 مُسْتَشَار counsellor, for [مُسْتَشَار] (root ش و ر test).  
 (b) تَرْبِیَّت education, for [تَرْبِیو (ت)] (root ر ب و grow up).  
 مُجَازَات punishment, for [مُجَازِیَّت] (root ج ز ی requite).  
 إِطَاعَت obedience, for [إِطَوع (ت)] (root ط و ع obey).  
 تَرْقِی progress, for [تَرْقِی] (root ر ق ی ascend).  
 تَسَاوِی equality, for [تَسَاوِی] (root س و ی be equivalent).  
 إِنْقِضَا end, for [إِنْقِضَاو] (root ق ض و decide, determine).  
 إِبْتِدَا beginning, for [إِبْتِدَاء] (root ب د ء begin).  
 إِحْتِیَاج desire, for [إِحْتِیَاج] (root ح و ج need).

<sup>1</sup> ی is sometimes used to represent a final *a* sound (see para. 57, note).

- إِسْتِعْفَا resignation, for [إِسْتَعْفَاو] (root ع ف و pardon).  
 إِسْتِيلَا conquest, for [إِسْتَوْلَاي] (root و ل ی rule).  
 إِسْتِقَامَت resistance, for [إِسْتِقْوَام(ت)] (root ق و م stand).

Other changes take place when the second and third letters of the root are the same.

- دَال pointing to, for [دَالِل] (root د ل ل indicate) I.  
 مُنْحَل dissolved, for [مُنْحَلِل] (root ح ل ل loosen) VII.  
 مُسْتَقِل independent, for [مُسْتَقِلِل] (root ق ل ل few) X.

The ت inserted into the VIIIth form assimilates to a greater or less degree to other dental consonants, and to the Arabic 'emphatic' consonants ص, ض, ط, ظ, and also absorbs و.

- مُتَّهَم suspected, for [مُوتَّهَم] (root و ه م fancy).  
 مُدَّعَى claimant, for [مُدَّتَّعَى] (root د ع و call).  
 مُزْدَحَم crowded, for [مُزْتَّحَم] (root ز ح م crowd).  
 مُضْطَرَب disturbed, for [مُضْتَّرَب] (root ض ر ب strike).  
 مُطَّلَع informed, for [مُطْتَّلَع] (root ط ل ع rise).  
 إِصْطِلَاح idiom, for [إِصْنِلَاح] (root ص ل ح correct).

### 108. Other Arabic Usages

Certain other Arabic usages are found from time to time in Persian.

#### (a) The Definite Article

The word for 'the' in Arabic is **أَل**. It appears in Persian only in a considerable number of names, and in certain expressions borrowed complete. It also forms the first half of the word **الله** God (pronounced *allah*, the short stroke above the *taṣdid* standing for *alef*). The chief points to be noted are:

- (i) The *fathe* is absorbed by any preceding vowel.

(ii) The *lam* is assimilated to a following ت, ث, د, ذ, ر, ز, س, i.e. the following letter receives a *tasdid*. However, the redundant *alef* and *lam* are preserved in the writing.

عَبْدُ النَّبِيِّ Abdo-n-Nabi.

عَبْدُ الرَّحِيمِ Abdo-r-Rahim.

نَصْرُ الدِّينِ Nasro-d-Din.

مَاوَرَايَ النَّهْرِ (ma-varaya-n-nahr) Transoxania  
(lit. 'what [is] beyond the river').

but

عَبْدُ الْمَجِيدِ Abdo-l-Majid.

The *alef* of the article is always written, even when the sound is absorbed by a preceding vowel, except after the Arabic preposition <sup>لِ</sup> to.

بِالْحَقِيقَةِ in truth (*belhaqiqe*); بِالْآخِرَةِ in the end (*belʔaxere*);

بِالْحَمْدِ لِلَّهِ (the) praise [be] to God! (*al-hamdo lallah*).

#### (b) The Feminine Ending

The Arabic Feminine ending, occurring as a basic part of some words, and also used in the inflection of adjectives and nouns, is <sup>ة</sup> . . . (-*atun*). In Persian this may be modified either to <sup>ه</sup> . . . or to <sup>ست</sup> . . .; sometimes the same word may occur with both forms, with or without modification of meaning.

إِدَارَةُ office (Ar. إِدَارَةٌ).

فُرْصَةُ opportunity (Ar. فُرْصَةٌ).

Plural words in Arabic, whether of the 'Broken' (see para. 105 above) or 'Sound' (see para. 108 (c) below) type, are regarded in Arabic as feminine singular (except when they refer to persons). So in Persian too an Arabic adjective qualifying an Arabic plural may often take the Arabic feminine ending:

دَوْلٍ مُتَّحِدَةٍ The United Nations.

تَرْتِيبَاتٍ لَازِمَةٍ the necessary arrangements.



## (c) Arabic case-endings

These are confined to (i) the Dual **يَين** . . ., used in certain expressions such as **والِدَين** (two) parents; **طَرَفَين** the two parties.

(ii) the Sound Plural endings **ين** . . . (masc.) and **ات** . . . (fem.) (see para. 28 (b)):

**مأمورين** officials.

**سُؤالات** questions.

(iii) The Accusative ending **أ** . . . or **ان** (. . . an), used adverbially (see para. 57):

**تَقْرِيبًا** nearly.

**حَقِيقَةً** truly.

## EXERCISES

## A. Translate into English:

تا این اواخر در ایران تماشاخانه وجود نداشت و نمایش بمعنی امروزی این کلمه بر ایرانیان مجهول بود. از اوایل قرن بیستم ایرانیان کم کم شروع بترجمه نمایشنامه‌های نویسندگان غرب نمودند، ولی این آثار بیشتر برای مطالعه بدرد میخورد و راجع بآنها نمایشی ترتیب داده نمیشد. کم کم دسته‌های کوچک بازیگران تشکیل شده پاره‌ای از همین نمایشنامه‌ها بازی کردند و رفته رفته ذوق در مردم برای تماشای نمایش ایجاد شد. امروز گذشته از عده زیادی سیناهای بزرگ که در تهران و دیگر شهرها با وسایل جدید دایر است دسته‌های بازیگر در تهران و سایر جاها تشکیل شده و در پایتخت هنرستان مخصوصی برای تهیه بازیگران تأسیس شده است. از طرف دیگر چند سال است که هنرستان عالی موسیقی تأسیس شده و تحت نظر استادان اروپائی یا ایرانی نوازندگان و خوانندگان و موسیقی‌دانهای لازم را تهیه میکنند.

## B. Translate into Persian:

Though during the nineteenth century A.D. Persia lost a large part of her land to Russia, Afghanistan and the Ottoman Empire, from another point of view it was a period of stability and consolidation. Above all it witnessed the influence of western ideas and industrial techniques. Many students began to travel in Europe for education, and at the same time numerous concessions were granted to European companies for the discovery and exploitation of Persia's natural resources. The impact of these events on Persian society led to a demand on the part of the people for a greater share in the government of the country, which demand culminated in the granting of a constitution in 1324 A.H. (lunar). In the years after the First World War the Qajar dynasty was deposed by Reza Khan, who crowned himself (placed the crown on his own head) as the first Shah of the Pahlavi dynasty, and inaugurated a vigorous programme of reform and modernization. The Anglo-Russian invasion of 1320 A.H. (solar) during the Second World War forced his abdication, but, on the foundation he had laid, the peaceful establishment of a constitutional democracy under the guidance of his son Mohammad Reza Shah became possible.

## VOCABULARY

theatre	تہاشاخانہ	be suitable	بیدرد خوردن
play (n.)	نمایش، نمایشنامہ	in connection with	راجع بہ
meaning	معنی	arrange	ترتیب دادن
word	کلمہ	group	دستہ
unknown	مجهول	player	بازیگر
first parts	آوایل	be formed	تشکیل شدن
translation	ترجمہ	portion	پارہ
write	نوشتن (نویس)	play, act (v.)	بازی کردن
west	غرب	gradually	رفتہ رفتہ
effect	اثر ( آثار works pl.)	taste	ذوق
reading	مطالعہ	watching	تہاشا
more	بیشتر	apart from	گذشتہ از

number عِدَّة  
 cinema سینما  
 in operation, running دایر  
 rest, remainder سایر  
 academy هنرستان  
 special مخصوص  
 training تهیه  
 music موسیقی  
 under\* تحت  
 supervision نظَر  
 play (instrument) نواختن (نواز)  
 sing خواندن  
 although اگرچه  
 lose از دست دادن  
 Russia روسیه  
 Afghanistan افغانستان  
 point of view نقطهٔ نظر  
 stability ثبات  
 consolidation استحکام  
 above all از همه بالاتر  
 witness (v.) مشاهده کردن  
 influence نفوذ  
 technique (pl. آسالیب)  
 industrial صنعتی  
 student (pl. . . . بن)  
 education تعلیم و تربیت  
 at the same time در عین حال

concession (pl. امتیازات)  
 numerous مُتَعَدِّد  
 grant واگذار کردن  
 discovery اِکشاف  
 exploitation اِستِمار  
 resource (pl. منابع)  
 impact برخورد  
 society اِجتماع  
 lead to منجر شدن به  
 demand تقاضا  
 on the part of از طرف  
 share سهم  
 government حکومت  
 culminate خاتمه یافتن  
 granting اعطا  
 constitution(al) مشروطه  
 lunar قمری  
 war جنگ  
 depose معزول کردن  
 Pahlavi پهلوی  
 crown تاج  
 place, lay گذاردن  
 head سر  
 vigorous شدید  
 reform اِصلاح  
 programme برنامه  
 modernization تَجَدُّد

inaugurate إِفْتِتَاحَ نَمُودَن

solar شَمْسِي

abdication إِسْتِعْفَا

force (v.) تَحْمِيلَ نَمُودَن

foundation اَسَاس

establishment تَشْكِيل

peaceful صُلَحْ آمِيز

democracy دِمُوكِرَاسِي

guidance هِدَايَت

## APPENDIX A

### The Nastaʿliq Script

1. The *nastaʿliq* variant of the Arabo-Persian script came into use in Persia during the fifteenth century, and since that time has been used almost exclusively for the writing of manuscripts in the Persian language. It continued to be used for the production of books by the lithographic process when this was introduced into Persia in the middle of the nineteenth century. Towards the end of the century letterpress printing began to gain ground; owing to the different levels at which *nastaʿliq* letters have to be joined, it was found impracticable to devise a satisfactory *nastaʿliq* typeface, and consequently the *nasx* type has been used almost entirely since that date for the printing of books and newspapers.

The *nastaʿliq* script, however, is still used (by photographic reproduction) for artistically printed books, as well as for book titles, display advertisements, shop signs, street names, posters, etc., so that a knowledge of it is essential. Moreover, it forms the basis of the *sekaste* script (Appendix B), which is the universal handwriting form now used for letters and so on.

2. The main characteristic of the *nastaʿliq* script that distinguishes it from the *nasx* is the fact that the letters slope backwards instead of forwards—that is, in a downward direction from right to left. Similarly combinations of letters tend to slope downwards in the same way (though to compensate for this, each successive combination tends to start *above* the preceding one). Coupled with this is a tendency to use a thicker pen in proportion to the size of letter, which has the further effect of exaggerating the broad strokes and elements in the letters, and minimizing the smaller details.

3. Table I gives the separate and joined forms of the letters in their *nasx* and *nastaʿliq* variants.

TABLE I

nastaʿliq	nasx
ا ا	ا ا
ب ب ب ب	ب ب ب ب
ح ح ح ح	ح ح ح ح
د د	د د
ر ر	ر ر
س س س س	س س س س
ص ص ص ص	ص ص ص ص
ط ط ط ط	ط ط ط ط
ع ع ع ع	ع ع ع ع
ف ف ف ف	ف ف ف ف
ک ک ک ک	ک ک ک ک
ل ل ل ل	ل ل ل ل
م م م م	م م م م
ن ن ن ن	ن ن ن ن
ی ی ی ی	ی ی ی ی

Points to be especially noted are:

(i) the forms assumed by د, ل, ر, و, and all of which are easily confused.

(ii) the two forms of س (in both separate and joined forms). In general the long stroke is used when there are no other long strokes (e.g. letters of the ب form) in the particular combination.

(iii) the various forms of ه, and especially the initial form.

4. Letters in combination undergo similar modifications to those observed in the *nasx* script, with a tendency still further to smooth away sharp angles. The more significant combinations are illustrated in Table II.

TABLE II

Combined forms in *nasx* and *nastaʿliq* compared

لا	لا	لا	لا
ما	ما	ما	ما
كا	كا	كا	كا
ها	ها	ها	ها
ص	ص	ص	ص
س	س	س	س
ك	ك	ك	ك
م	م	م	م
ب	ب	ب	ب

5. The only writing signs that differ at all in appearance are *hamze* and *madde*.

~ , ~ ع

6. The following short examples serve to illustrate some of the points mentioned. It will be seen that the dots, being written with the full thickness of the pen, are larger in proportion to the letters than in *nassx*, as well as being placed further away and less exactly in relation to the letter to which they belong.

جغرافیای ایران

برای سال ششم دبستان

جغرافیای ایران برای سال ششم دبستان

تعارف پیپسی کولا

بهترین خوش آمد بدوستان است

تعارف پیپسی کولا بهترین خوش آمد بدوستان است

The following verse, from a Persian copy-book, shows how the proportions of the letters are measured, the small white dots being each the thickness of the pen.

بود چون دم بجه در بوستان

پیچش کنی بر دل دو بوستان



بود چون دم صبح در بوستان  
نصیحتگری بر دل دوستان

*Notes:* بُودَ is an archaic form of the Subjunctive of بودن, here used with a general or timeless sense.

In verse the order of words frequently differs from the natural prose order.

#### VERBATIM TRANSLATION

'Is like the breath of morning in the garden  
Wise-counsel upon the heart of friends.'

The two passages that follow are the Persian exercises from Lessons x and XI (with one or two minor modifications). No transcription is therefore given here.

#### LESSON X

### آب و هوای ایران

ایران مادمطه معتدل شمالی قرار دارد و بدین سبب آب و هوای آن بطور کلی معتدل است، اما بعلت کوههای بلند گسترده و صحراهای پهناور و مجاورت دریاهای انواع گوناگون آب و هوای معتدل در آن می بینیم چنانکه دکناره های دریای مازندران آب و هوای معتدل و بارانی، در صحراهای داخلی گرم و خشک و کوهستانها سرد و دکناره های جنوب بسیار گرم است. پر باران ترین جای ایران کناره های دریای مازندران و خشک ترین ناحیه آن کویر لوت

است

## LESSON XI

## نجات ماه

شب بهتابی در چاه نگاه میکرد عکس ماه را در چاه دید فکر کرد که ثواب دارد اگر ماه را از چاه  
 نجات دهد پس قلابی در چاه انداخته چند دور گردانید از قضا قلاب بنگ بزرگی در ته چاه  
 گیر کرد تا هر چه زور زد که آن را بالا بکشد از جای خود تکان نخورد آخر الامر از بس قوت کرد  
 ریمان پاره شد قلاب به پشت افتاد و چون نگاه کرد ماه را در آسمان دید گفت: عیب ندارد  
 اگر چه خیلی رنج کشیدم ولی بمقصد رسیده ماه را نجات دادم.

## APPENDIX B

## The Šekaste Script

1. The *šekaste* or 'broken' script is a derived form of the *nastaʔliq*, its main characteristic, apart from those shared with its parent script, being the linking up of letters that are not normally joined. The tendency towards minimization and exaggeration already noted in the *nastaʔliq* script is carried still further, as is the smoothing out of sharp curves and angles.

Since nowadays it is normally written with a steel or fountain pen, instead of the traditional reed still used for the other two calligraphic scripts, it does not show the variations of thickness that are characteristic of *nasx* and *nastaʔliq*, and also of earlier *šekaste*. It must also be remembered that, unlike the other two scripts, it is an unstandardized handwriting, and therefore subject to the personal variations and idiosyncracies of individual writers. As will be seen even from the few examples given

in this appendix, these variations can be very wide-ranging. No hard and fast rules can therefore be given, and the forms of the letters and combinations given below should be taken rather as a guide to the decipherment of hand-written letters. A further difficulty arises from the fact that many common terms and expressions used in correspondence are taken for granted, and so often scribbled without much attention to clarity. Fluency in recognizing these can only be acquired by constant practice.

2. In the first of the tables below the shapes of the individual letters are given in their joined and separate forms. Table II shows samples of letters in combination, while Table III shows combined groups of letters that are not joined in the standard scripts.

TABLE I

The *ṣekaste* alphabet

ف	ف	ف	ف	ف	ف	ا	ا	ا	ا
ك	ك	ك	ك	ك	ك	ب	ب	ب	ب
ل	ل	ل	ل	ل	ل	ح	ح	ح	ح
م	م	م	م	م	م	د	د	د	د
و	و	و	و	و	و	ر	ر	ر	ر
ن	ن	ن	ن	ن	ن	س	س	س	س
ي	ي	ي	ي	ي	ي	ص	ص	ص	ص
ه	ه	ه	ه	ه	ه	ط	ط	ط	ط
						ع	ع	ع	ع

TABLE II

Some combined letters in *sekaste*

بر	بل	ر	مد
سر	علل	س	سد
سب	سب	بین	بین
ر	مر	یقین	یقین
نظر	ظہر	یک	یک
ہا	ہا	لکھ	لکھ
بھا	بھا	کھا	کھا
ہم	ہم	ملک	ملک
ف	ف	یگانہ	یگانہ
یا	یا	لا	لا
اصلی	اصلی	ملا	ملا
		ح	ح

It should be noted that two dots are normally written as a short stroke, and three dots as a circle. Sometimes the final stroke of the letter or word is carried on so as to link the dot group to it.

شما: ہ | است: است

Dots are correctly placed above or below the word, but rarely in closer relation to the letter itself; they are frequently omitted altogether. A group of three or more dots belonging to different neighbouring letters may often be combined in one circle.

انتظار: اطر | مفتخر: مقور

TABLE III

## 'Separate' letters in combination

*Alef* joined to following letter.

اند اند  
این این  
اده اده  
اده اده  
اد اد  
حاصل حاصل  
آقای آقای  
مال مال  
اعلام اعلام

See also *re*, *vav*.*Re*, *Zain*, *Že* joined to following letter.

را را  
قرا قرا  
کرا کرا  
زاد زاد  
اراده اراده  
خواب خواب  
زیراکه زیراکه  
زد زد  
دارد دارد  
کردن کردن  
مردم مردم  
برده برده  
رگ رگ  
فرموده فرموده  
فرمان فرمان  
سازمان سازمان  
بالاحضره بالاحضره  
ریا ریا

*Dal*, *Zal* joined to following letter.

دم دم  
دو دو  
ده ده  
یده یده  
شده شده  
دیده دیده

See also *alef*, *re*, *vav*.

Vav joined to following letter.

وا	وا
خواهد	خواهد
جوانان	جوانان
الوانع	الوانع
مطلوب	مطلوب
وجه	وجه
وجوه	وجوه
نبوده	نبوده
مورده	مورده

آورد	آورد
آورده	آورده
خورد	خورد
ول	ول
معلول	معلول
تومان	تومان
قانون	قانون
کوناگون	کوناگون
جلوه	جلوه

See also re.

3. The three letters that follow are given primarily as samples of different styles of hand-writing. An exact transcription in *nasx* follows each, and careful note should be made of the modifications the letters have undergone. Apart from the script, the letters are also to be noted for their use of 'honorific' phraseology, which is characteristic even of comparatively informal letters.

آقای ساتن  
 متمنی است مقرر فرمائید رسید ریال در مقابل رسید آئینده  
 جلد سوم مجد آئینده در پیوست تقدیم میشود مبلغ  
 یکصد و پنجاه ریال به حامل لطف کنند.

#### TRANSCRIPTION

آقای ساتن

متمنی است مقرر فرمائید در مقابل رسید آئینده جلد سوم مجد آئینده که به پیوست تقدیم میشود مبلغ یکصد و پنجاه ریال به حامل لطف کنند.

## TRANSLATION

Mr Sutton

It is requested that you arrange (lit. 'order arranged') that, in exchange for the subscription receipt of the third volume of the magazine *ayande* (*The Future*) which is presented herewith, the bearer be given (lit. 'they do favour to the bearer') the sum of one hundred and fifty rials.

## NOTES

فرمودن, 'to order, command,' is commonly used in formal and semi-formal writing and conversation instead of the auxiliary verbs کردن, نمودن, etc., and also to replace گفتن. In all these cases it may only be used when the subject of the verb is the *person addressed*. The speaker or writer himself would either use the ordinary verbs or, as an alternative to گفتن, عرض کردن, 'to make a petition.'

لطف کردن and تقدیم شدن (passive شدن) both mean little more than 'to give', the first being used with the writer as subject, and the second for the addressee.

هـ ل پ . اول ساسی عزیز

در جواب نامه سرخ ۲۸ تیر ۱۳۲۵.۱۰ خبانی بطورم مردم زنده  
بعد باین نامه خدمه اسرار شرح حال و آثار خود را بنمیه قطعه  
مکسر تقدیم می‌دارم و از سنده نام ارادتمند دایم در کتاب فوارج  
بزرگ و پیشرفت مطبوعات ایران در قطع اثر برفع نفیس خواه  
به ذکر خوابه کرد قلم صمیمانه فکر می‌کنم  
ارادتمند

## TRANSCRIPTION

آقای ل. پ. الون ساتن عزیز

در جواب نامه مورخ ۲۸ تیرماه ۱۳۲۶ جنابعالی بطوری که مرقوم فرموده بودید با این نامه خلاصه‌ای از شرح حال و آثار خود را بضمیمه یک قطعه عکس تقدیم می‌دارم و ازینکه نام ارادتمند را هم در کتاب خود راجع بترقی و پیشرفت مطبوعات ایران که قطعاً اثر بسیار نفیسی خواهد بود ذکر خواهید کرد قبلاً صمیمانه تشکر می‌کنم.  
ارادتمند

## TRANSLATION

Dear Mr L. P. Elwell-Sutton

In answer to your letter (lit. 'the letter of the lofty side') dated 28 Tirmah 1326, as you had written, with this letter I present a summary of my biography and works, together with one (piece) photograph, and I sincerely thank you in advance for the fact that you will mention my name (lit. 'the name of the sincere [friend]') also in your book about the progress and advancement of the press of Iran, which will certainly be a very valuable work.

Sincerely,

## NOTES

جَنَابِعالی, lit. 'the lofty side', is the usual formal expression for 'you'. The corresponding phrases for 'I' are اِنْجَانِب ('this side'), بَنده ('slave'), اِرَادَتَمَنده ('sincere'), etc.

قطعه is a numerator, see para. 88.

مرقوم فرموده بودید: see notes on preceding letter.





## TRANSCRIPTION

بمبئی ۲۲ دسامبر ۱۹۴۷

آقای عزیز و محترم امیدوارم وجود شریف عالی در کمال  
صحت است خیلی متاسفم که در لندن زیاد نماندم که بیشتر بفیض  
زیارت شما نائل گردم.

اکنون چون عید سال نو نزدیک است تبریکات خود را تقدیم داشته  
سلامت و سعادت شما را خواهانم.

یکماهی در بمبئی هستم و بعد بایران میروم.  
فرمایشی باشد مرقوم فرمائید.

ارادتمند صمیمی

## TRANSLATION

Bombay, 22 December 1947

Dear and respected Sir,

I hope (lit. 'am hopeful') you are (lit. 'the noble lofty existence is') in  
good (lit. 'the perfection of') health. I am very sorry that I did not stay  
long (lit. 'much') in London, so that I might more enjoy (lit. 'become  
grasping at the bounty of') a visit to you.

Now, since the festival of the New Year is near, I present my greetings,  
and wish (lit. 'am wishing') your well-being and happiness.

I am one month in Bombay, and after I go to Persia.

[If] there is a request (lit. 'command'), write [it].

Very sincerely,

## NOTES

وُجُودِ شَرِیفِ عالی: a rather elaborate honorific form, as also,  
lower, بَفِیضِ زِ یَارَتِ شَما نائلِ گَرَدَم.

نائل, also فرمائید below: . . . is used for . . . .

گردم : the extra stroke of the *gaf* is omitted.

خواهان: Present Participle of خواستن, 'to wish', see para. 99f.

فرمائش: an alternative somewhat archaic spelling of فرمایش, verbal noun from فرمودن, 'to command', here—'to request' (see para. 99*d*).

In the last two or three lines most of the dots are missing.

## APPENDIX C

### Books for Further Study and Reading

**Language**

- G. Lazard: *Grammaire du Persan Contemporain* (Paris, 1957).  
J. T. Platts and G. S. A. Ranking: *A Grammar of the Persian Language*, 2nd ed. (Oxford, 1911).  
D. C. Phillott: *Higher Persian Grammar* (Calcutta, 1919).  
J. A. Boyle: *A Practical Dictionary of the Persian Language* (London, 1949).  
S. Haim: *New Persian-English Dictionary*, 2 vols. (Tehran, 1934-36).  
S. Haim: *Shorter Persian-English Dictionary* (Tehran, 1958).  
S. Haim: *Larger English-Persian Dictionary*, 2 vols. (Tehran, 1941-3).  
S. Haim: *One-volume English-Persian Dictionary* (Tehran, 1959).  
S. Haim: *Shorter English-Persian Dictionary* (Tehran, 1959).  
F. Steingass: *A Comprehensive Persian-English Dictionary* (London, 1892, repr. 1930).  
H. D. Graves Law: *Persian Letters* (London, 1948).

## Background

- L. P. Elwell-Sutton: *Modern Iran* (London, 1941).  
 Peter Avery: *Modern Iran* (London, 1965).  
 L. P. Elwell-Sutton: *Guide to Iranian Area Study* (Ann Arbor, 1952).  
 Donald Wilber: *Iran, Past and Present*, 4th ed. (Princeton, 1958).  
 Olive Suratgar: *I Sing in the Wilderness* (London, 1951).  
 Sir Percy Sykes: *History of Persia*, 2 vols., 3rd ed. (London, 1930).  
 R. Ghirshman: *Iran* (Harmondsworth, 1954).

- R. Roolvink: *Historical Atlas of the Muslim Peoples* (Amsterdam, 1957).  
 R. Levy: *The Social Structure of Islam*, 2nd ed. (Cambridge, 1957).  
 D. M. Donaldson: *The Shi'ite Religion* (London, 1933).  
 A. J. Arberry (ed.): *The Legacy of Persia* (Oxford, 1953).  
 A. A. Hekmat: *Glimpses of Persian Literature* (Calcutta, 1956).  
 R. Levy: *Persian Literature* (London, 1923).  
 A. J. Arberry: *Classical Persian Literature* (London, 1958).  
 E. G. Browne: *Literary History of Persia*, 4 vols., 2nd ed. (Cambridge, 1928).  
 M. Ishaque: *Modern Persian Poetry* (Calcutta, 1943).  
 M. Rahman: *Post-Revolution Persian Verse* (Aligarh, 1955).  
 H. Kamshad: *Modern Persian Prose Literature* (Cambridge, 1966).  
 M. S. Dimand: *Handbook of Muhammadan Art*, 2nd ed. (New York, 1937).  
 Arthur Upham Pope: *Masterpieces of Persian Art* (New York, 1945).  
 A. T. Wilson: *Bibliography of Persia* (Oxford, 1930).

### *Suggested Reading in Persian*

- Kuhi Kermani: *Panʿdah Afsaneye Rustaʿi*. Folk Tales. (Tehran, 1954).  
 Iranian Ministry of Education: *Jografyaye Iran baraye Sale Šešome Dabestan*. School geography. (Tehran, 1958).  
 Mahdi Hamidi (ed.): *Daryaye Gouhar*, Vol. I. Modern short stories. (Tehran, 1950).  
 H. Kamshad: *Modern Persian Prose Reader* (Cambridge, 1969).



use	استعمال	most(ly)	اغلب
resistance	استقامت	sun	آفتاب
reception	استقبال	fall	افتادن (افت-)
receive (guests, etc.)	استقبال کردن	opening, inauguration	افتتاح
studio	استودیو	inaugurate	افتتاح نمودن
conquest	استیلا	creation	آفرینش
(see سیر)	آسرار	tale	افسانه
Alexander	اسکندر	Afghan	افغان
Esfand (12th month)	اسفند	Afghanistan	افغانستان
Islam	اسلام	sir, Mr	آقا
Islamic	اسلامی	step, advance	اقدام
technique	آسلوب (آسالیب pl.)	at least	آقل
name	اسم		اکبر (pl. اکابر = adults)
name (v.)	اسم گذاشتن	elder; Akbar (Mogul emperor)	
Esma'il	اسماعیل	discovery	اکتشاف
sky	آسمان	majority	اکثریت
Asia	آسیا	now	اکنون
mistake	اشتباه	already	هم اکنون
make a mistake	اشتباه کردن	if	اگر
(see شخص)	اشخاص	although	اگرچه
occupation	ایشغال	family	آل
occupy	ایشغال کردن	Buyids	آل بویه
Ashkanian, Parthian	اشکانی	Samanids	آل سامان
acquainted, acquaintance	آشنا	(آلودن see)	آلا-
(see صاحب)	آصحاب	now, directly	آلان
insistence	اِصرار	certainly	آلبتّه
insist	اِصرار کردن	thanks be to God	الحمد لله
idiom	اصطلاح	God (Ar.)	الله
Isfahan	اصفهان	stain	آلودن (آلا-)
originally	اصلاً	Elizabeth	الیزابیت
reform	اصلاح	but	آما
obedience	اطاعت	statistics, calculation	آمار
room	اطاق	emperor	امپراتور
strike (n.)	اعتصاب	empire	امپراتوری
granting	اعطا	examination	امتحان
majesty	آعلیحضرت	concession	امتیاز (امتیازات pl.)
anarchy, disorder	اغتشاش		

come	آمدَن (آ-)	first	اول
come out	بیرون آمدن	firstly	اولاً
affair; order	امر (امور pl.)	first	اولین
order (v.)	امر دادن	Ahriman (Zoroastrian spirit of evil)	آهریمن
today	امروز	importance	اهمیت
tonight	امشب	iron	آهن
possibility	امکان	interrogative particle	آیا
teach	آموختن (آموز-)	(یوم see)	ایام
teacher	آموزگار	creation	ایجاد
mix	آمیختن (آمیز-)	create	ایجاد نمودن
associate	در آمیختن	Iran, Persia	ایران
hope	امید	Iranian, Persian	ایرانی
hope (v.)	امید داشتن	stand	ایستادن (ایست -)
hopeful	امیدوار	station	ایستگاه
(آمیختن see)	آمیز -	they	ایشان
that	آن	tribe	ایل (ایلات pl.)
store	آنبار	this	این
there	آنجا	here	اینجا
monopoly	انحصار	coming, future	آینده
throw	آنداختن (آنداز-)		
little	آندک		
justice	إنصاف		
unjust	بی إنصاف	with, by	با
(نظر see)	آنظار	(بایستن see)	با-
end	إنقضا	gate	باب
then	آنگاه	papa	بابا
England, Britain	إنگلیستان	wind	باد
English, British	إنگلیسی	time ('fois'); load	بار
stir up	أنگیختن (أنگیز-)	once again	بار دیگر
he, she, it	او	rain (n.)	باران
last parts	آواخر	rainy	پرباران
middle parts	آواسط	rainy	بارانی
first parts	آوایل	rain (v.)	باریدن
zenith	أوج	open, again	باز
bring	آوردَن	open (v.)	باز کردن
bring out, turn (into به)	در آوردن	return	باز گشتن
(وقت see)	أوقات	bazaar	بازار

ب

arm	بازو	be manifested	بروز شدن
play	بازی	big, great	بزرگ
play, act	بازی کردن	enough	بسی
toy	اسباب بازی	so much	آزبسی
player, actor	بازیگر	bind, close	بستن (بند -)
(بودن) (see)	باش -	many, much, very	بسیار
garden	باغ	after, next, later	بعد
gardener	باغبان	some	بعضی
weave	بافتن	grocer	بقال
above; height, stature	بالا	but, perhaps, or rather	بلکه
finally	بیاخره	long, tall, high	بلند
in truth	بالحقیقه	raise up	بلند کردن
bank	بانک	yes	بل
lady	بانو	Bombay	بمبئی
belief	باور	construction, basis	بنا
believe	باور کردن	on the basis of	بنابر
together	باهم	(بستن) (see)	بند -
(هوش) (see)	باهوش	slave ; I	بنده
be necessary	بایستن (با -)	smell	بو
child	بچه	be	بودن (باش -)
bad	بد	garden	بوستان
bad-natured	بدنهاد	Buyid (Persian dynasty)	بویه
on	بر	to, with, in, by	به
on	بر روی	Bahman (11th month)	بهمن
on	بر سر	without	بی
meet	برخوردن	desert	بیابان
pick up	برداشتن	explanation	بیان
return	برگشتن	verse	بیت (آیات pl.)
brother	برادر	awake	بیدار
nephew	برادر زاده	waken	بیدار کردن
for	برای	out, outside	بیرون
impact	برخورد	expel	بیرون کردن
carry, take-away	بردن (بر -)	twenty	بیست
snow	برف	more	بیش، بیشتر
lightning, electricity	برق	ill	بیمار
flash (v.)	برق زدن	hospital	بیمارستان
programme	برنامه	(دیدن) (see)	بین -



between	بین	day after tomorrow	پس فردا
among	مابین	back (n.); behind (prep.)	پشت
nose	بینی	five	پنج
		fifty	پنجاه
		window	پنجره
		Thursday	پنجشنبه
		hand	پنجه
foot	پا	wear (clothes)	پوشیدن
Papakan (family name of Ardashir, founder of Sasanid dynasty)	پاپکان	money	پول
king	پادشاه	Pahlavi (surname of reigning dynasty in Persia)	پهلوی
Parthian	پارت (پارتها pl.)	wide	پهن
cloth	پارچه	extensive	پهناور
portion	پاره	track; in pursuit of	پی
break, tear (v. intrans.)	پاره شدن	cup	پیاله
policeman	پاسبان	twist, corner, screw	پیچ
clean	پاک	evident	پیدا
fifteen	پانزده	find	پیدا کردن
five hundred	پانصد	old (person)	پیر
capital	پایتخت	shirt, blouse	پیراهن
down, below	پائین	follower	پیرو
lower (v.)	پائین آوردن	victory	پیروزی
father	پدر	near, in the presence of, 'chez'; ago	پیش
receive, accept	پذیرفتن (پذیر-)	before	پیش از
full	پر	go forward	پیش رفتن
rainy	پرباران	advancement	پیشرفت
ask	پرسیدن	prophet	پیغمبر
flight	پرواز	union	پیوست
fly	پرواز کردن	herewith, enclosed	به پیوست
flying (adj.)	پروازی		
Parviz (male name)	پرویز		
Parvin (female name)	پروین		
day before yesterday	پریروز	until, as far as; as long as, so that	تا
night before last	پیش شب	fold, unit	تا
after, behind; then	پس	theatre	تئاتر
give back	پس دادن	crown	تاج
post office	پستخانه	history	تاریخ
son, boy	پسر	prehistoric	قبل از تاریخ

fresh, new	تازه	imagination	تصوّر
foundation	تأسیس	imagine	تصوّر کردن
found	تأسیس کردن	picture, image	تصویر (تصاویر pl.)
fever	تب	offering	تعارف
greeting	تبریک ( . . . ات pl.)	surprise	تعجب
commercial	تجاری	be surprised	تعجب کردن
modernization	تجدّد	holiday	تعطیل
under	تحت	teaching	تعلیم
contempt	تحقیر	education	تعلیم و تربیت
humble (v.)	تحقیر کردن	understanding	تفاهّم
compulsion	تحمیل	subtraction	تفریق
force (v.)	تحمیل نمودن	demand	تقاضا
throne, couch	تخت	presentation	تقدیم
Persepolis	تخت جمشید	be presented	تقدیم شدن
codification	تدوین	present (v.)	تقدیم داشتن
codify	تدوین کردن	nearly, about	تقریباً
upbringing	تربیت	division	تقسیم
arrangement	ترتیب (ترتیبات pl.)	fault	تقصیر
arrange	ترتیب دادن	moving	تکان
translation	ترجمه	move (v. intrans.)	تکان خوردن
bitter, sour	ترش	repetition	تکرار
progress	ترقی	be repeated	تکرار شدن
leaving	ترک	alone	تک و تنها
leave (v. trans.)	ترک کردن	bitter	تلخ
Turkish	ترکی	watching (n.)	تماشّا
equality	تساوی	theatre	تماشاخانه
ninth (fraction)	تسع	all, whole	تمام
Sirius	تیشتر	civilization	تمدّن
thanks	تشکر	body	تن
thank (v.)	تشکر کردن	lazy	تنبّل
establishment	تشکیل	swift	تند
be formed	تشکیل شدن	stenographer	تند نویس
encouragement	تشویق	narrow, tight	تنگ
encourage	تشویق کردن	tighten	تنگ کردن
collision	تصادف	only, alone	تنها
occupation	تصرف	loneliness	تنهایی
occupy	تصرف کردن	thou, you (s.)	تو

in (side)	تو	search (n.)	جستجو
powerful	توانا	geography	جغرافیا
be able	توانستن (توان-)	pair	جفت
by means of	توسط	volume (book)	جلد
expansion	توسعه	meeting, session	جلسه
expand (v. trans.)	توسعه دادن	in front of	جلو
tuman (coin)	تومان	Jamshid (male name)	جمشید
bottom	ته	addition	جمع
Tehran (capital of Persia)	تهران	Friday	جمعه
provision	تهیه	side	جانب
arrow; shaft, beam	تیر	your honour, you	جانبای عالی
sharp	تیز	(lit. 'lofty side')	
Timur (male name)	تیمور	goods	جنس (pl. اجناس)
Tamerlane	تیمور لنگ	war	جنگ

## ث

secondly	ثانیاً	fight	جنگ کردن
stability	ثبات	forest	جنگل
wealth	ثروت	south (n.)	جنوب
rich	ثروتمند	south (adj.)	جنوبی
third (fraction)	ثلث	barley	جو
eighth (fraction)	ثمان	(جستن see)	جو-
spiritual reward	ثواب	answer	جواب
		sack	جوال
		young	جوان
		sort, kind	جور

## ج

place; instead of	جا	jewel, essence, ink	جوهر (pl. جواهر)
where	جائیکه	world	جهان
because	از آنجائیکه	world (adj.)	جهانی
soul, life	جان	pocket	جیب
side	جانب		
successor	جانشین		
animal	جانور		
ancestor	جد (اجداد pl.)		
new	جدید		
except	جز		
seek	جستن (جو-)		

## چ

well	چاه
tea	چای
why?	چرا
wheel	چرخ
eye	چشم
wink	چشمک
spring	چشمه

how?	چطور	religious tradition	حدیث (احادیث pl.)
how much?	چقدر	letter, word	حرف
what sort of?	چگونه	speak	حرف زدن
such	چنان	movement	حرکت
if	چنانچه	move, set out	حرکت کردن
just as	چنانکه	feeling	حس (احساسات pl.)
some, how many?, how much?	چند	Hasan (male name)	حسن
several, many	چندان	Hosein (male name)	حسین
several	چندین	preservation	حفظ
fork	چنگال	truth, due	حق
such	چنین	grateful	حق شناس
wood, stick	چوب	really	حقیقه
how?, because, when, like	چون	story	حکایت
what?, because	چه	government, administration	حکومت
either . . . or	چه . . . چه	attack, invasion	حمله (حملات pl.)
four	چهار	qualities	حیثیات
fourteen	چهل و ده		
Wednesday	چهارشنبه		
forty	چهل		
thing	چیز		
	ح		
Haji, pilgrim	حاجی	end	خاتمه
event, accident (pl. حوادث)	حادثه	culminate	خاتمه یافتن
rich (fertile)"	حاصلخیز	out (side)	خارج
ready, present	حاضر	go out	خارج شدن
condition	حال (احوال pl.)	foreign(er)	خارجی
whereas	در حالی که	rise	خاستن (خیز-)
until now	تا بحال	rise up	برخاستن
biography	شرح حال	earth	خاک
now	حالا	Khan	خان
bearer	حامیل	dynasty	خاندان
even	حتی	domestic	خانگی
limit	حد (حدود pl.)	madam, Mrs, lady	خانم
so far as . . . , to such an extent	تا حدیکه	house	خانه
that		news	خبر (اخبار pl.)
		inform	خبر دادن
		bad (things)	خراب
		Khorasan (province in N. E. Persia)	خراسان
		Khordad (3rd month)	خرداد

small quantity	خُرده	street	خیابان
purchaser	خَرِیدار	imagination	خیال
buy	خَرِیدَن	no	خیر
tired	خسته	(خاستن) <i>see</i>	خیز -
dry	خشک	much, many, very	خیل
blotting paper	خشککن		
angry	خشمگین		
particularity	خصوص		
especially	بخصوص		
line	خط (خطوط pl.)	in (side)	داخل
danger	خطر	internal	داخلی
dangerous	خطرناک	give	دادَن (دِه -)
summary	خلاصه	(داشتن) <i>see</i>	دار -
Caliph	خلیفه (خُلَفَا pl.)	Darius (Achaemenian king)	داریوش
fifth (fraction)	خمس	story	داستان
sleep (n.)	خواب	have	داشتن (دار -)
bedroom	خوابگاه	pointing to	دال
sleep (v.)	خوابیدن	skirt	دامَن
wish, want, ask for	خواستن (خواه -)	wise	دانا
call, read, sing	خواندَن	know	دانستن (دان -)
(خواستن) <i>see</i>	خواه -	grain, unit	دانه
either . . . or	خواه . . . خواه	in operation, running	دایر
sister	خواهر	continually	دائماً
request (n.)	خواهش	primary school	دبستان
request (v.)	خواهش کردن	daughter, girl	دختر
good	خوب	in	در
self	خود	door	دَر
eat, drink	خوردَن	long	دراز
good	خوش	grade	درجه
welcome	خوش آمد	tree	درخت
lucky	خوشبخت	pain	درد
sweet-smelling	خوشبو	be suitable	بیدرد خوردن
happiness	خوشحالی	lesson	درس
pretty	خوشگِل	large, thick	درشت
happy	خوشوقت	lie (n.)	دروغ
blood	خون	sea	دریا
self	خویش	thief	دزد
		steal	دزدیدن

hand; suit (of clothes)	دست	late	دیر
lose	از دست دادن	yesterday	دیروز
apparatus	دستگاه	last night	دیشب
instruction	دستور (دستورات pl.)	other	دیگر
handle, group	دسته	religion	دین
enemy	دشمن	dinar (small coin)	دینار
register, exercise book, office	دفتر	demon	دیو
time ('fois')	دفعه	wall	دیوار
care, attention	دقت		
minute	دقیقه	ذ	
shop	دکان (دکاکین pl.)	mention (n.)	ذکر
doctor	دکتر	mention (v.)	ذکر کردن
heart	دل	taste	ذوق
breath, mouth; at, near	دم		
democracy	دموکراسی	ر	
two	دو		
twelve	دوازده	particle denoting direct object	را
bicycle	دو چرخه	relation, connection	رابطه (روابط pl.)
sew	دوختن (دوز-)	in connection with	راجمیع به
far	دور	comfortable	راحت
turn	دور	true, right (hand)	راست
telescope, camera	دوربین	pleased, content	راضی
distant	دور دست	drive	رانند
period	دوره	driver	راننده
(see دوختن)	دوز-	road	راه
friend	دوست	set out	راه افتادن
love (v.)	دوست داشتن	walk	راه رفتن
friendly	دوستانه	railway	راه آهن
Monday	دوشنبه	guidance	راهنمایی
government, state, nation	دولت (دول pl.)	guide (v.)	راهنمایی کردن
two hundred	دویست	Lord	ربّ (master = آرباب pl.)
ten	ده	master	آرباب
village	ده (دهات pl.)	quarter	ربع
villager	دهاتی	man	رجل
peasant	دهقان	rejection	ردّ
Dei (10th month)	دی	reject	ردّ کردن
see	دیدن (بین-)		

rule	رسم	cord	رسمان
as, in the shape of	برسم	manager	رئیس
receipt	رسید		
arrive	رسیدن	ز	
sequence	رشته		
Reza (male name)	رضا	tongue, language	زبان
conduct	رفتار	knock, strike	زدن (زن -)
behave	رفتار کردن	gold	زر
go	رفتن (رو -)	farming	زراعت
gradually	رفته رفته	yellow	زرد
removal	رفع	Zoroaster	زردشت
companion	رفیق	Zoroastrian	زردشتی
rival	رقیب (رقبای pl.)	clever	زرنک
trouble	رنج	golden	زردین
take trouble	رنج کردن	reins	زمام
colour	رنگ	time ('temps')	زمان
coloured	رنگین	winter	زمستان
face, on	رو	ground, land, floor	زمین
(see رفتن)	رو -	fall	زمین خوردن
(see رابطه)	روابط	(see زدن)	زن -
circulation	رواج	woman, wife	زن
be current	رواج داشتن	Zand (18th century Persian dynasty)	زند
spread	رواج یافتن	life	زندگی
religious leader	روحانی ( . . : pl.)	live	زندگی کردن
river	رود (-خانه)	quick, soon	زود
Rudaki (Persian poet)	رودکی	strength	زور
day	روز	exert oneself	زور زدن
newspaper	روزنامه	(see زیستن)	زی -
(see رئیس)	رؤسا	much, many, too much, too many,	زیاد
rural	روستایی	widely	
Russian	روسی	visit	زیارت
Russia	روسیه	harmful	زیانبخش
Roman, Greek	رومی	beautiful	زیبا
glory	رونتق	under	زیر
rial (coin)	ریال	because	زیرا
pour	ریختن (ریز -)	live	زیستن (زی -)
pour out	بیرون ریختن		

	س	cold (n.)	سَرَمَا
		catch cold	سَرَمَا خُورْدَن
past, former	سابق	upside down	سَرَنِگُون
formerly	سابقاً	overthrow	سَرَنِگُون کردن
make, build	ساختن (ساز-)	surface	سطح
simple	ساده	happiness	سَعَادَت
shore	ساحل (سَوَاحِل pl.)	attempt (n.)	سَمی
(see ساختن)	ساز-	try (v.)	سَمی کردن
Sasanian (Persian dynasty)	ساسانی	white	سفید
hour, watch	ساعت	Safidrud (White River)	سفیدرود
year	سال	ceiling	سَقَف
long years	سالیانِ دَرَّاز	dog	سَگ
chieftain	سالار	well-being	سَلَامَت
Samanid (Persian dynasty)	سامان	Seljuq (Turkish dynasty)	سَلجُوقی
rest	سایر	sultan, monarch	سُلْطَان
cause	سَبَب (أَسْبَاب pl.)	reign (n.)	سَلْطَنَت
article(s)	آسیاب	reign (v.)	سَلْطَنَت کردن
because of	بِسَبَب	Soleiman (male name)	سَلِیْمَان
green	سَبْز	Sindh	سِند
seventh (fraction)	سَبْج	River Indus	رودِ سِند
entrust	سپَرْدَن (سپَر-)	stone	سَنگ
then, next	سپس	heavy	سَنگین
star	سِتاره	direction	سَو
magic	سِحْر	badness	سَو
difficult	سَخْت	misunderstanding	سَو تَفَاهُْم
word	سَخَن	suspicion, distrust	سَو ظَن
spokesman	سَخَنگو	(see ساحل)	سَوَاحِل
poet	سَخَنوَر	mounted	سِوَار
sixth (fraction)	سُدس	mount (v. trans.)	سِوَار کردن
head; on	سَر	mount (v. intrans.)	سِوَار شُدَن
end-to-end	سَر تا سَر، سَر تا سَر (ی-)	question	سُؤَال (سُؤَالَات pl.)
secret	سِرّ (أَسْرَار pl.)	burn	سَوخْتَن (سوز-)
soldier	سَرَباز	hole	سَوْرَاخ
red	سَرخ	Syria	سُورِیَه
cold (adj.)	سَرْد	(see سوختن)	سوز-
speed	سُرْعَت	three	سه



Tuesday	سه شنبه	explanation	شرح
share	سهم	biography	شرح حال
thirty	سی	condition, term	شرط (شرایط pl.)
black	سیاه	east	شرق
apple	سیب	company	شرکت
potato	سیب زمینی	participate	شرکت کردن
satisfied	سیر	beginning	شروع
soaked	سیراب	begin	شروع کردن
thirteen	سیزده	noble	شریف
three hundred	سیصد	six	شیش
silver, wire	سیم	six hundred	ششصد
cinema	سینما	sixty	شصت
		(شاعر see)	شعرا
	ش	penetrate	شکافتن
		complaint	شکایت
Shapur (male name)	شاپور	complain	شکایت کردن
horn	شاخ	break, defeat	شکستن (شکَن-)
happiness	شادی	you	شما
poet	شاعر (شعرا pl.)	reckoning	شمار
evening, supper	شام	be reckoned	بشمار رفتن
sixteen	شانزده	number	شماره
Shah, king	شاه	north	شمال
prince	شاهزاده	northern	شمالی
achievement, masterpiece	شاهکار	solar	شمسی
royal	شاهنشاهی	recognize, know	شناختن (شناس-)
royal	شاهی	acquainting (n.)	شناسائی
perhaps	شاید	identity card	شناسنامه
worthy	شایسته	Saturday	شنبه
prevalent	شایع	hear	شنیدن (شنو-)
night	شب	(شدن see)	شو-
day and night	شبان روز	emotion	شور
camel	شتر	highway	شوسه
person	شخص (اشخاص pl.)	Susa	شوش
personality	شخصیت (شها pl.)	driver	شوفر
become	شدن (شو-)	tragic	شوم
vigorous	شدید	evidence	شهادت

town, city	شهر	ض	
fame	شهرت		
make one's name	شهرت یافتن	blow; multiplication	ضرب
Shahrivar (6th month)	شهریور	contents	ضمین
Shiraz	شیراز	meanwhile	در ضمن
Shirazi	شیرازی	annex (n.)	ضمیمه
sweet	شیرین	together with	بضمیمه
sweets	شیرینی		
confectioner	شیرینی فروش	ط	
Shi'a (sect of Islam)	شیعه		
		naturally	طبیعاً
		natural	طبیعی
		scheme	طرح
		side, direction	طرف
owner, possessor	صاحب (pl. اصحاب)	on the part of	آز طرف
morning	صبح	two sides	طرفین
patience	صبر	road	طریق (pl. طرق)
wait	صبر کردن	demand (n.)	طلب
health	صحت	demand (v.)	طلب کردن
desert	صحرا	demand (v.)	طلبیدن
hundred	صد	rising	طلوع
shout, voice	صدا	rise	طلوع کردن
call	صدا زدن	rope	طناب
Safavid (Persian dynasty)	صفوی	manner	طور
goodness	صلاح	just as; so that	بطوریکه، همانطوریکه
approve	صلاح دانستن	in general	بطور کلی
peace	صلح	storm	طوفان
peaceful	صلح آمیز	length	طول
sincere	صمیمانه	last (v.)	طول کشیدن
sincere	صمیمی	long	طولانی
(see صنعت)	صنایع	aeroplane	طیاره
fine arts	صنایع ظریفه		
chair	صندلی	ظ	
craft	صنعت (pl. صنایع)		
industrial	صنعتی	surface	ظاهر
form, face	صورت	apparently	ظاهراً
whereas; in case	در صورتیکه	container	ظرف
mask	صورتک	within, in the space of	در ظرف

belief	ظَنَ	separately	عَلَّیْجِه
noon	ظَهْر	building	عِیَارَت
appearance	ظُهْرور	uncle	عَمُو
appear	ظُهْرور یافتن	popular	عَوام پَسَنَد
		fault	عَیْب
	ع	it doesn't matter	عَیْب نَدَارَد
just (adj.)	عادل	festival	عَیْد
intelligent	عاقِل	New Year gift	عَیْدِی
lofty	عالی	eye; original	عَیْن
generality	عامه	at the same time	دَر عَیْنِ حال
accruing	عاید		
Abbas (male name)	عَبَّاس	غ	
Abdorrahim (male name)	عَبْدُ الرَّحِیْم	cave	غار
Abdolmajid (male name)	عَبْدُ الْمَجِیْد	careless	غافل
Abdonnabi (male name)	عَبْدُ النَّبِی	west	غَرْب
Ottoman	عُثْمَانِی	western	غَرْبِی
for the time being	عِجَالَه	submersion	غَرْق
haste	عَجَلَه	be submerged	غَرْق شُدَن
hurry	عَجَلَه داشتن	sunset	غُرُوب
wonderful	عَجِیْب	strange(r)	غَرْیْب
number	عَدَد	Ghazna (city in Afghanistan)	غَزَنَه
Iraq, Mesopotamia	عِراق	sorrow	غَم
Arabs (coll.)	عَرَب	sorrowful	غَمگِیْن
Arabia	هَرَبِیْستان	other than	غَیْرِ آذ
Arabic, Arabian	عَرَبِی		
petition	عَرَض	ف	
say	عَرَض کردن	Persian (language)	فارسی
dear	عَزِیز	above	فَرَا
tenth (fraction)	عَشْر	envelop	فَرَاگیر فتن
angry	عَصَبَانِی	messenger	فَرَاش
evening; age	عَصَر	completion	فِراغَت
behind	عَقَب	finish	فِراغَت یافتن
idea	عَقِیْدَه (عَقاید pl.)	France	فِرانسه
reflection	عَكس	tomorrow	فَرْدَا
cause	عِلَّت	Ferdousi (Persian poet)	فِرْدَوْسی
Ali (male name)	عَلِی		

send	فِرستادن (فِرست -)	height	قامت
opportunity	فِرست	law	قانون (قوانین pl.)
angel	فِرشته	before; earlier	قبل
order	فِرمودن (فرما-)	prehistoric	قبل از تاریخ
down	فِرود	in advance	قبلاً
go down	فِرورفتن	acceptance	قبول
sell	فِرودختن (فروش-)	accept	قبول کردن
airport	فِرودگاه	murder	قتل
Farvardin (1st month)	فِروردین	stature	قد
(see فروختن)	فروش -	quantity	قدر
culture	فِرهنگ	power	قدرت
cultural	فِرهنگی	old, ancient	قدیم
shout (n.)	فِریاد	repose	قرار
shout (v.)	فِریاد زدن	establish	قرار دادن
(see فِریتن)	فِریب -	be situated	قرار داشتن
Faridun (male name)	فِریدون	restore	قرار گذاشتن
deceive	فِریتن (فِریب -)	be established	برقرار شدن
actually	فِعلاً	century	قرن (قرون pl.)
only (adv.)	فِقْط	Middle Ages	قرونِ وُسطیّ
thought	فِکَر	part	قِسْمَت
think	فِکَر کردن	chance	قُضا
plateau	فِلَات	by chance	از قُضا
technical	فِنّی	drop	قطره (قطرات pl.)
immediately	فِوَرأ	cutting	قطع
list	فِهْرِست	be interrupted	قطع شدن
understanding	فِهم	certainly	قطعیاً
understand	فِهمیدن	piece	قطعه
bounty	فِیض	Caucasus	قفقاز
		lock (n.)	قفل
		lock (v.)	قفل کردن
		hook	قلاب
Qajar (Persian dynasty)	قاجار	fort	قلعه
spoon	قاشق	pen	قلم
magistrate, judge	قاضی	pencase	قلمدان
decisive	قاطع	lunar	قمری
carpet	قالی	(قانون see)	قوانین

## ق

strength	قُوَّت	general (adj.)	کُلّ
revive	قُوَّت دادن	hat	کلاه
use force	قُوَّت کردن	word	کلمه
strong	قوی	whole (adj.)	کُلّی
	<b>ک</b>	in general	بِطَوَرِ کُلّی
palace	کاخ	little	کَم
(کاشتن <i>see</i> )	کار-	exceptional	کَم نظیر
work	کار	perfection	کمال
work (v.)	کار کردن	belt	کَمَر بَند
factory	کارخانه	help	کَمَک
knife	کارد	help (v.)	کَمَک کردن
worker	کارگر	(کردن <i>see</i> )	کَن-
member	کارمند	shore	کِناره
would that . . . !	کاش	now	کُنون
plant	کاشتن (کار-)	up to now	تا کُنون
paper, letter	کاغذ	present-day	کُنونی
enough	کافی	short	کوتاه
complete	کامل	small	کوچک
completely	کاملاً	side-street	کوچه
leap (year)	کبیسه	child	کودک
book	کتاب (کُتُب pl.)	try	کوشیدن
bookshop	کتابخانه	star	کَوکَب (کَوایِب pl.)
bookseller	کتابفروش	mountain	کوه
dirty	کثیف	mountainous area	کوهستان
where?	کجا	salt desert	کَویر
which?	کدام	that (conj.)	که
village headman	کدخدّا	who?	که
do	کردن (کَن-)	who?	کی
crore (500,000)	کُرور	when?	کِی
Karim (male name)	کَریم	kilogram	کیلو
person	کس		<b>گ</b>
kill	کُشتن	bull, cow	گاو
country	کِشور	place	گاه
draw, pull	کَشیدن	plaster	گچ
shoemaker	کَفّاش	place, lay	گُذاردن
shoe	کفش	place, leave, allow	گُذاشتن (گُذار)

pass (trans.)	گذراندَن	ل	
pass	گذشتَن (گذر)		
pass away	درگذشتَن	necessary	لازم
apart from	گذشته از	clothes	لباس
expensive	گران	aspect	لحاظ
(see گشتَن)	گردد -	tremble	لرزیدن
spin (v. trans.) cause to turn	گردانیدن	army	لشکر
hungry	گرسنه	London	لندن
victim, occupied	گیرفتار	favour	لطف
take, seize	گیرفتَن (گیر)	lame	لنگ
hot, warm	گرم	Lut (desert in S.E. Persia)	لوت
widespread	گسترده	but	لیکن
opening	گشایش	tumbler	لیوان
be opened	گشایش یافتَن		
turn, become	گشتَن (گرد-)	م	
say, tell	گفتَن (گو-)	we	ما
conversation	گفتگو	mother	مادر
mud	گیل	Mazandaran (Persian province)	مازندران
flower, rose	گل	motor-vehicle	ماشین
rose-garden	گیلستان	property; belonging to	مال
lost	گم	official	مأمور
appoint	گماشتَن (گمار-)	remain	ماندن
unknown	گمنام	Mani (Persian religious reformer)	مانی
sin	گناه	Transoxania	ماورای النهر
wheat	گندم	moon, month	ماه
(see گفتَن)	گو-	blessed	مبارک
ear	گوش	beginner	مبتدی
meat	گوشت	afflicted	مبتلا
corner	گوشه	sum (of money)	مبلغ
various	گوناگون	based	مبني
sort, kind	گونه	on the basis of	مبنی بر
pearl	گوهر	foundation	مبني (مبانی pl.)
perhaps	گویا	sorry	متأسف
(see گرفتَن)	گیر -	belligerent	متحارب
hold (n.)	گیر	united	متحد
get caught	گیر کردن	unite	متحد کردن
Gilan (Persian province)	گیلان	expert	متخصص
		metre (measurement)	متر

expected	مُتَرَقَّب	director	مُدِير
joined	مُتَّصِل	city	مَدِينَه (مَدُن، pl.)
join	مُتَّصِل ساختن	sect	مَذْهَب
numerous	مُتَعَدَد	mirror	مِرْآت
decomposing	مُتَلَاثِي	regularly	مُرْتَبَاً
civilized	مُتَمَدِّن	time ('fois')	مَرْتَبَه
centralized	مُتَمَرِّكَز	man	مَرَد
requested	مُتَمَنِّي	(pl. مَرْدُم = people, مردان = men)	
appropriate	مُتَنَاسِب	Mordad (5th month)	مَرْدَاد
engine	مُتَوَر	die	مَرْدَن (مِر -)
suspected	مُتَّهَم	written	مَرْقُوم
like	مِثْل	write	مَرْقُوم فَرمودَن
triangular	مُثَلَّث	centre	مَرَكَز
allowed	مُجَاز	central	مَرَكْزِي
punishment	مُجَازَات	passing, course	مَرُور
neighbouring	مُجَاوِر	ill	مَرِيض
nearness	مُجَاوَرَت	hospital	مَرِيضْخَانَه
splendid	مُجَلِّل	crowded	مُرْدَحِيم
magazine	مَجَلَّه	farmland	مَرَزْعَه (مَرَارِع، pl.)
equipped	مُجَهِّز	journey	مُسَافَرَت
unknown	مُجْهول	travel (v.)	مُسَافَرَت كَرْدَن
needed	مُحْتَاج	solid	مُسْتَحْكَم
respected	مُحْتَرَم	employee	مُسْتَحْدِم
deprived	مُحْرُوم	counsellor	مُسْتَشَار
student	مُتَحَصِّل (pl. . . . يَن)	independent	مُسْتَقِيل
firm	مُحْكَم	direct	مُسْتَقِيم
strengthen	مُحْكَم كَرْدَن	mosque	مَسْجِد (مَسَاجِد، pl.)
Mohammad (male name)	مُحَمَّد	toothbrush	مِسْوَاك
Mahmud (male name)	مَحْمُود	Christian	مَسِيحِي
obliteration	مَحْو	course, route	مَسِير
obliterate	مَحْو كَرْدَن	responsible	مَسْئُول
correspondent	مُخْبِر	witnessing	مُشَاهَدَه
special	مُخْصِص	witness (v.)	مُشَاهَدَه كَرْدَن
frightened	مُخَوَّف	constitution(al)	مُشْرُوطَه
period, interval	مُدَّت	problem	مُشْكِل
school	مَدْرَسَه	famous	مَشْهُور
claimant	مُدَّعِي	Egypt	مِصْر

catastrophic	مَصِیْبَتِ آوَر	national	ملّی
disturbed	مُضْطَرَب	possible	مُمْکِن
corresponding to	مُطابِق	country	مَمْلِکَت
reading, study	مُطالعه	I	من
press (printed)	مَطبوعات	resource	مَنْبِع (مَنابع pl.)
informed	مُطْلِع	awaiting	مُنْتَظِر
contemporary	مُعاصِر	awaited	مُنْتَظَر
assistant	مُعاوِن	pulling	مُنْجِر
temperate	مُعْتَدِل	lead to	مُنْجِرَ شَدَن بَه
deposed	مَعزول	dissolved	مُنْحَل
depose	مَعزول کردن	house	مَنْزِل (مَنازِل pl.)
known	مَعْلوم	clerk	مَنْشِی
meaning	مَعْنی	zone	مَنْطَقَه
shop	مَآزَه	scene	مَنْظَرَه
west	مَغْرِب	reflected	مُنْعِکَس
conquered	مَغْلُوب	profit	مَنْفَعَت (مَنافع pl.)
succumb	مَغْلُوب گشتن	hair	مُو
Mongol(s), Mogul(s)	مَنگول	treaty	مُوافَقَت
key	مِفْتَاح	effective	مُؤَثِّر
inspector	مُفْتِش	be effective	مُؤَثِّر اَفادَن
useful	مُفید	cause	مَرْجِب
opposite	مُقابِل	dated	مُورَخ
in exchange for	دَر مُقابِل	music	مُوسِیقِی
position	مَقام	successful	مُوفِق
arranged	مَقَرَّر	succeed	مُوفِق شَدَن
objective	مَقْصَد	temporarily	مُوقْتاً
intention	مَقْصود	occasion	مُوقِع
letter	مَکْتُوب (مَکاتِب pl.)	believer	مُؤْمِن
surely; except	مَکَر	moonlit	مَهتابی
molla (priest)	مَلا	Mehr (7th month)	مِهر
consideration	مُلاحِظَه	Mehrabad (suburb of Tehran)	مِهرآباد
meeting	مُلاقات	kind (adj.)	مِهریان
meet	مُلاقات کردن	important	مُهیم
nation	مِلّت (مِلّات pl.)	hotel	مِهمانخانه
nationalism	مِلّت پَرستی	between	مِیان
king	مَلِک (مَلوک pl.)	Mithra (old Persian deity)	مِترَه
queen	مَلِکَه	square (in town)	مِیدان



(مردن <i>see</i> )	میر -	attribute	نِسَبَت دادن
table	میز	sign	نِشان
possible	مِیَسَر	show	نِشان دادن
inclination	میل	seat (v.)	نِشانَدَن
like	میل داشتن	sit	نِشِستَن (نِشین)
birth	میلاد	wise counsel	نَصیحتگری
B.C.	قبل از میلاد	half	نِصف
A.D.	میلادی	sight	نَظَر (اَنظار pl.)
million	میلیون	under the supervision of	تَحْتَ نَظَر
fruit	میوه	equal, like	نَظیر

## ن

unclean	ناپاک	exceptional	کَم نَظیر
obliged; necessarily	ناچار	person	نَظَر
oblige	ناچار کردن	influence	نَظَر
district	ناحیه (نَواحی pl.)	valuable	نَظیر
ill	ناخوش	painter	نَظاش
ignorant	نادان	point	نَقطه (نقاط pl.)
Nader (male name)	نادر	point of view	نَقطه نَظَر
suddenly	ناگه	look (n.)	نِگاه
name	نام	keep; stop	نِگاه داشتن
letter	نامه	look (v.)	نِگاه کردن
name (v.)	نامیدن	(نمودن <i>see</i> )	نَما -
bread	نان	play (theat.)	نَمایش
lunch	ناهار	play, script (theat.)	نَمایشنامه
grasping	نایل	representative	نَماینده
achieve	نایل شدن به	salt	نَمک
result	نتیجه	salt-cellar	نَمکدان
rescue (n.)	نجات	show (v.)	نَموَدَن (نَما -)
rescue (v.)	نجات دادن	new	نَو
carpenter	نَجّار	play (instrument)	نَواختَن (نَواز -)
no	نخبر	ninety	نَوَد
first	نخست	nineteen	نَوزده
near (prep.)	نزد	New Year's Day (March 21)	نَوروز
near (adv. and prep.)	نزدیک	writer	نَویسنده
relatively	نسبتاً	Nushirvan (Sasanid king)	نوشیروان
		kind, sort	نَوع (اَنواع pl.)
		servant	نَواکر
		no	نَه

nine	نه	province, country, city; home	وِلايَت
nature	نيهاد	but	وَلِي
bad-natured	بَدَنِيهاد	but	وَلِيكِن
powerful	نيرِ وَستد	ruined	وِيران
also	نيز		
good	نيك		
half	نيم	Hejri, A.H. (Moslem calendar)	هَجَرِي
half (n.)	نيمه	Achaemenian (first Persian dynasty)	هَخَامَنِشِي
و			
		guidance	هَدَايَت
and	وَ	present, gift	هَدِيَه
entering	وَارِد	each, every	هَر
enter	وَارِد شُدَن	never	هَرگِيز
falling	وَاقِع	Hormozd (supreme, 'good' deity in Zoroastrian religion)	هَرْمُزد
in fact	دِ رَوَاقِع	thousand	هَزَار
shoe-polish	وَاکس	eight	هَشْت
polish (v.)	وَاکس کَرَدَن	eighty	هَشْتاد
grant	وَاکْذار کَرَدَن	seven	هَفْت
parents	وَالدِین	seventy	هَفْتاد
Valerian (Roman emperor)	وَالِریان	weekly	هَفْتِگی
existence	وَجود	week	هَفْتَه
exist	وَجود داشتن	seventeen	هِفْدَه
in spite of	بَا وَجود	destruction	هَلَاک
in spite of the fact that	بَا وَجودیکه	be destroyed	هَلَاک شُدَن
terror	وَحْشَت	also; even; together	هَم
blow (v. trans.)	وَزَانِدَن	already	هَم آکِن
minister	وَزیر (وَزَرَا pl.)	together	بَا هَم
middle (Arabic feminine form)	وَسطی	fall to pieces, collapse	بِهَم خُورَدَن
means	وَسیله (وَ سَايل pl.)	same	هَمَان
fatherland	وَطَن	august	هَمایون
patriotism	وَطَن دوستی	Hamadan	هَمَدان
loyalty	وَفا	together; companion	هَمراه
loyal	باوَفا	colleague	هَمکار
disloyal	بِی وَفا	compatriot	هَموَطَن
death	وَفات	all	هَمه
time ('temps')	وَقت (اَوَقات pl.)	always	هَمیشه
when	وَقتیکه	same	هَمین

just here	هَـمِـنْجَا	ی.	
India	هَـنـد (—وستان)		
academy	هَـنـرِ سَـتـان	or	یا
time, moment	هَـنْگـام	(یافتن <i>see</i> )	یاب —
yet, still	هَـنـوز	memory	یاد
air	هَـوَا	teach	یاد دادَن
climate	آب و هَـوَا	help (n.)	یاری
aeroplane	هَـوَاپیما	eleven	یازده
aeronautical; aviation	هَـوَاپیمائی	find; gain (victory)	یافتن (یاب —)
aerial	هَـوایی	that is to say	یعنی
skill	هوش	one	یک
clever	باهوش	one another	یکدیگر
Hushang (male name)	هوشنگ	Sunday	یکشنبه
eighteen	هیجده	day	یوم (آیات pl.)
any (with negative)	هیچ	Greek	یونانی
no one	هیچکس	countryside, summer resort	ییلاق

## ENGLISH-PERSIAN VOCABULARY

N.B.—This vocabulary contains only those words used in the English-Persian exercises, and the Persian meanings given are only those appropriate to the uses required in those exercises.

### A

Abbas	عباس	anarchy	اِغْتِشاش
abdication	استعفاء	ancestor	جَدّ (أجداد pl.)
able, be	توانستن (توان-)	and	و
above all	از همه بالاتر	Anglo-	انگلیسی
accident	حادثه (حوادث pl.)	another	دیگر، دیگری، یکی دیگر
Achaemenian	هخامنشی	answer	جواب
achieve	نایل شدن به	apparently	ظاهراً
achievement	شاهکار	appear	ظهور یافتن
A.D.	میلادی	appearance	ظهور
administration	حکومت	apple	سیب
adorn	آرایش دادن	Arabia	عربستان
affair	آمر (أمور pl.)	Arabian	عربی
Afghan	آفغان	Arabic	عربی
Afghanistan	آفغانستان	Arabs (coll.)	عرب
after	بعد از	Ardashir	آردشیر
again	باز، دوباره	army	لشکر
again, once	بار دیگر	arts, fine	صنایع ظریفه
age (era)	عصر	Aryan	آریائی
ago	پیش	as (in the form of)	برسر
A.H.	هجری	Ashkanian	آشکانی
Akbar	اکبر	Asia	آسیا
Alexander	اسکندر	attack (n.)	حمله (حملات pl.)

### B

Ali	علی	bank	بانک
all	همه	bazaar	بازار
already	هم اکنون	B.C.	قبل از میلاد
also	هم، نیز	be	بودن (باش-)
although	اگرچه	beautiful	زیبا
among	ما بین، از		

become	شدَن (شور-)	civilization	تمدَن
begin	شروع کردن	civilized	تمدَن
beginning	ابتدا	clean	پاک
beneath	زیر	climate	آب و هوا
between	بین	codify	تدوین کردن
black	سیاه	collapse	بِهَم خوردَن
book	کتاب	come	آمدَن (آ-)
boy	پسر	comfortable	راحت
break up	بِهَم خوردَن	commercial	تجارتی
bring	آوردَن	company	شرکت
brother	برادر	concession	امتیاز (امتیازات pl.)
build	ساختن (ساز-)	consolidation	استحکام
building	عیارت	constitution(al)	مشروطه
but	آما، ولی، لیکن	contemporary	مُعاصر
Buyids	آلِ بویه	continually	دائماً
by	به، با	correct	صحیح

C

caliph	خليفة (خلِفا pl.)	corresponding to	مطابق
can (v.)	توانستن (توان-)	country	مملکت، کشور
capital	پایتخت	course	مسیر؛ مَرور
car	اتومبیل	create	ایجاد نمودَن
careless	غافل	crown	تاج
carry out	اجرا کردن	culminate	خاتمه یافتن
catastrophic	مَصیبت آور	cultural	فرهنگی
Caucasus	قفقاز	culture	فرهنگ

D

cave	غار	dangerous	خطرناک
central	مَرکزی	Darius	داریوش
centralized	مُتمرکز	daughter	دختر
centre	مَرکز	day	روز، یوم (ایام pl.)
century	قَرَن (قرون pl.)	dear	عزیز
chair	صندلی	death	وفات
cheap	آرزان	decisive	قاطع
chieftain	سالار	defeat (v.)	شِکستَن (شِکتن-)
child	بچه، کودِک	demand (n.)	تقاضا
Christian	مسیحی	democracy	دموکراسی
city	شهر	depose	مَزول کردن



G

gain (find)	یافتن (یاب -)	importance	اهمیت
Ghazna	غزنه	important	مهم
girl	دختر	in	در، تو
glory	رونق	internal	داخلی
go	رفتن (رو -)	into	در، به
gold	زر	inaugurate	افتتاح نمودن
government	دولت، حکومت	independent	مستقل
gradually	رفته رفته	India	هند (- وستان)
grant (v.)	واگذار کردن	Indus river	رود سند
granting (n.)	اعطا	industrial	صنعتی
great	بزرگ	influence	تأثیر
Greek	یونانی	ink	جوهر
green	سبز	instruction	دستور (دستورات pl.)
guidance	هدایت	interrupted, be	قطع شدن
		interval	مدت
		invasion	حمله (حمله‌ات pl.)

H

hair	مو	Iraq	عراق
half (n.)	نیمه	irrigation	آبیاری
Hamadan	همدان	Isfahan	اصفهان
hand	دست	Islam	اسلام
Hasan	حسن	Islamic	اسلامی
head	سر		
here	اینجا		
history	تاریخ		
Hosein	حسین		
house	خانه، منزل		
how many?	چند		
humble (v.)	تحقیر کردن		
hundred	صد		
Hushang	هوشنگ		

I

I	من		
idea	عقیده (عتاید pl.)		
if	اگر		
impact	برخور		

J

just (righteous)	عاد
------------------	-----

K

Karim	کرم
Khan	خان
Khorasan	خراسان
king	پادشاه
knife	کارد
knock at	زدن (زن -)
known	معلوم

L

land	زمین
language	زبان
large	بزرگ





on	روی، بر، سر	poet	شاعر (شعرا pl.)
once again	بار دیگر	point of view	نقطه نظر
one	یک، یکی	policeman	پاسبان
only	فقط	popular	عوام پسند
open (adj.)	باز	possible	ممکن، میسر
or	یا	post office	پستخانه
other	دیگر	pour out (intr.)	بیرون ریختن
Ottoman	عثمانی	power	قدرت
overthrow	سرنگون کردن	powerful	نیرومند

P

Pahlavi	پهلوی	present	حاضر
painter	نقاش	pretty	خوشگِل
palace	کاخ	prevalent	شایع
Papakan	پاپکان	problem	مشکل
paper	کاغذ	programme	برنامه
part	قسمت	progress	ترقی
part of, on the	از طرف	prophet	پیغمبر

Parthian	پارت (پارتها pl.)	Qajar	قاجار
parts, first	آوایل	queen	ملیکه
parts, middle	اواسط	question	سؤال (.. . ات pl.)
parts, last	آواخر		
Parvin	پروین		

Q

patriotism	وطن دوستی		
peaceful	صلح آمیز		

R

pen	قلم	read	خواندن
people	مردم	ready	حاضر
period	دوره، مدت	red	سرخ
Persepolis	تخت جمشید	reform	اصلاح
Persia	ایران	reign (n.)	سلطنت
Persian	ایرانی	reign (v.)	سلطنت کردن
person	کس، شخص (اشخاص pl.)	reins	زمام
personality	شخصیت (.. . ها pl.)	reject	رد کردن
pieces, fall to	به هم خوردن	relation	رابطه (روابط pl.)
place (v.)	گذاشتن (گذار-)، گذاردن	religion	دین
plateau	فلات	religious leader	روحانی (.. . ین pl.)
pleased	راضی	repeated, be	تکرار شدن
		resource	منبع (منابع pl.)

restore	قِرَار گِذاشتَن	sharp	تیز
result, as a	دَر نَتیجِه	Shi'a	شیعه
revive	قَوْت دادَن	Shiraz	شیراز
Reza	رِضا	shore	کِناره
rich (fertile)	حاصلخیز	short	کوتاه
rival	رَقِیبَ (رَقِیبا pl.)	show	نَمودَن (نِما-)
Roman	رومی	sides, two	طَرَفِین
royal	شاهی، شاهنشاهی	simple	ساده
Rudaki	رودکی	sincere	صمیمانه
rule (n.)	حُکومت	sir	آقا
rule (v.)	حُکومت کَرَدَن	sister	خواهر
Russia	روسیه	sit	نِشستَن (نِشین-)
Russian	روسی	six	شیش

## S

Safavid	صَفَوِی	sleep (n.)	خواب
Safidrud	سَفیدرود	small	کوچک
Samanids	آلِ سامان	snow	بَرَف
same	هَمَن، هَمَان	society	اجتماع
same time, at the	دَر عَینِ حال	solar	شمسی
Sasanid	ساسانی	Soleiman	سَلیمان
say	گفتَن (گو-)	someone else	کسی دیگر
scheme	طَرَح	son	پسر
sea	دَریا	sour	تَرش
second	دَوَم، دَوِیم	south (n.)	جَنُوب
sect	مَذهَب	south (adj.)	جنوبی
see	دیدَن (بین-)	space of, in the	دَر ظَرَف
seize	گیرفتَن (گیر-)	spite of, in	با وُجُود
self	خود، خویش	spread (intr.)	رَواج یافتَن
Seljuq	سَلجُوق	stability	ثَبات
send	فِرِستادَن (فِرِست-)	state	دَوَلت (دَوَل pl.)
sequence	رِشته	still	هَنوز
seven	هَفت	strange	غَرِیب
seventy	هَفتاد	street	خِیابان
Shah	شاه	strengthen	مُحکَم کَرَدَن
Shapur	شاپور	strike	زَدَن (زَن-)
share	سَهم	strong	قَوِی
		student	مُتَحَصِّل (پل. یَن . . .)
		submerged, be	غَرَق شُدَن

succeed	موفق شدن	throne	تخت
successor	جانشین	time ('temps')	وقت، زمان
succumb	مغلوب گشتن	time (period)	مدت
suddenly	ناگه	to	به
sultan	سلطان	today	امروز
surface	سطح	together	باهم، همراه
Susa	شوش	town	شهر
sweet	شیرین	Transoxania	ماورای النهر
sweets	شیرینی	travel (v.)	مسافرت کردن
Syria	سوریه	tree	درخت

T

table	میز	tribe	ایل (ایلات. pl.)
take	گرفتن (گیر-)	true	صحیح
take away	بردن (بر-)	Turkish	ترکی
Tamerlane	تیمور لنگ	turn into	گشتن (گرد-) به
tea	چای	twelve	دوازده
teach	آموختن (آوز-)	twenty	بیست
technique	آسلوب (آسالیب. pl.)	two	دو
Tehran	تهران	two hundred	دویست
tell	گفتن (گو-)	two sides	طرفین

U

ten	ده	under	زیر، تحت
than	از	unite	متحد کردن
that (conj.)	که	unity	اتحاد

V

that (pron.)	آن		
there	آنجا		
there is	هست	Valerian	والریان
these	این، اینها	vehicle	ماشین
third	سیوم	very	خیل، بسیار
thirteen	سیزده	very much	خیل، بسیار
thirty	سی	victory	پیروزی
this	این	vigorous	شدید

W

those	آن، آنها		
though	اگرچه		
thousand	هزار	war	جنگ
three	سه	we	ما
three hundred	سیصد	western	غربی

what?	چه		Y	
which?	کدام	year		سال
who?	کی، که	years, long		سالیانِ دراز
whole	تمام	yellow		زرد
widely	زیاد	yes		بلی
winter	زمستان	young		جوان
with	با، به			
within	در ظرف		Z	
witness (v.)	مشاهده کردن	Zand		زند
work (n.)	کار	zenith		اوج
work (v.)	کار کردن	Zoroaster		زردشت
world (adj.)	جهانی	Zoroastrian		زردشتی

The following table will enable the corresponding Persian and Christian dates to be determined for any year between A.D. 1897 and 2029 (1276 and 1407 A.H.S.).

### Comparative Persian and Christian Calendars, 1276–1407 (1897–2029)

Persian leap years				1276 D 1407	All other years	A + 1 (excl. 1277) A + 2 (excl. 1278) B + 1
A	B	C	D			
1276	1309	1342	1375			
1280	1313	1346	1379			
1284	1317	1350	1383			
1288	1321	1354	1387			
1292	1325	1358	1391			
1296	1329	1362	1395			
1300	1333	1366	1399			
1304	1337	1370	1403			
I Farvardin 1st (31) iv April 1st (30)	20. iii 13. I	21. iii 12. I	22. iii 11. I			
II Ordibehesht 1st (31) v May 1st (31)	20. iv 12. II	21. iv 11. II	22. iv 10. II			
III Khordad 1st (31) vi June 1st (30)	21. v 12. III	22. v 11. III	23. v 10. III			
IV Tir 1st (31) vii July 1st (31)	21. vi 11. IV	22. vi 10. IV	23. vi 9. IV			
V Mordad 1st (31) viii August 1st (31)	22. vii 11. V	23. vii 10. V	24. vii 9. V			
VI Shahrivar 1st (31) ix September 1st (30)	22. viii 11. VI	23. viii 10. VI	24. viii 9. VI			
VII Mehr 1st (30) x October 1st (31)	22. ix 10. VII	23. ix 9. VII	24. ix 8. VII			
VIII Aban 1st (30) xi November 1st (30)	22. x 11. VIII	23. x 10. VIII	24. x 9. VIII			
IX Azar 1st (30) xii December 1st (31)	21. xi 11. IX	22. xi 10. IX	23. xi 9. IX			
X Dey 1st (30) i January 1st (31)	21. xii 12. X	22. xii 11. X	23. xii 10. X			
XI Bahman 1st (30) ii February 1st (28/29)	20. i 13. XI	21. i 12. XI	22. i 11. XI			
XII Esfand 1st (29/30) iii March 1st (31)	19. ii 11. XII	20. ii 10. XII 11. XII <sup>1</sup>	21. ii 9. XII 10. XII <sup>2</sup>			

<sup>1</sup>In Christian leap years 1964–2028.

<sup>2</sup>In Christian leap years 1904–1960.



# INDEX

(References are to paragraphs)

- abjad*, 89
- Abstract Nouns, 99
- Accusative Case, 57, 108
- Addition, 93
- Adjectives, 28, 35, 36, 37, 44, 56, 72, 80, 99, 100
  - Comparative, 81
  - Comparison of, 38
  - Prepositional, 61
  - Pronominal, 99
  - of Quantity, 45, 56, 80, 88
  - Relative, 99
- Adjectival Suffixes, 39
- Adverbs, 35, 55-8, 72, 80
  - Prepositional, 61
- Adverbial Conjunctions, 81
  - Expressions, 63
- agar*, 85
- agarce*, 85
- Age, 95
- Agent, 99
- alef*, 4, 6, 34, 39, 41, 53, 57, 108, App. B
- Alphabet, 1, 30, 89, App. A, B
- an*, 57, 108
- Antecedent, 80
- Appositional Relative Clause, 80
- Arabic, 1, 31, 57, 90, 91, 103, 108
  - Accusative Case, 57, 108
  - Broken Plural, 28, 105
  - Formulae, 104, 105
  - Irregular Forms, 103, 107
  - Participles, 106
  - Sound Plural, 28, 108
  - Triliteral Root, 103
  - Verbal Nouns, 106
- Arithmetical Expressions, 93
- Article, Definite, 28, 108
  - Indefinite, 28
- Attribute, 62
- Auxiliary Verbs (Conjugation), 65
  - (in Compound Verbs), 72
- aʔ*, 38, 59, 81
  - aʔ an-e*, 36
- an*, 28
- an*, 43, 81-3
  - aʔ an-e*, 36
- aya*, 29
- bar*, 59
- be* (letter), 5, 34
  - (preposition), 39, 59
  - (verbal prefix), 48, 52, 71
- budan*, 65, 66, 71, 74, 80
- Calendar, 96
- Cardinal Numbers, 88
- Case, 16
  - Accusative, 57, 108
  - Nominative, 108
- Causal Clauses, 81, 82
  - Sentences, 79
- Causative verbs, 102
- ce* (letter), 8
  - (conjunction), 84a
- cin* (letter), 8, 34
- Clauses, Causal, 81, 82
  - Comparative, 81, 82
  - Concessive, 81, 82, 85
  - Conditional, 85
  - Consecutive, 81
  - Final, 82
  - Locative, 81
  - Relative, 80
  - Temporal, 80, 81
- Combinations (of letters), 34, App. A, B
- Comparative, 38
  - Adjectives, 81

- Clauses, 81, 82
  - Sentences, 79
- Comparison, 59
  - of Adjectives, 38
- Complement, 63
- Compound Nouns, 37
  - Prepositions, 60
  - Tenses, 66
  - Verbs, 63, 72
- conance*, 83
- conanks*, 82
- Concessive Clauses, 81, 82, 85
- Consecutive Clauses, 81, 82
- Conditional Sentences, 85
- Conjunctions, 44, 74, 84a, 85
  - Adverbial, 81
  - Co-ordinating, 62
  - Indefinite Relative, 84
  - Prepositional, 82
  - Pronominal, 83
- Consonants, 1, 26, 31
- Co-ordinate Sentences, 74
- Co-ordinating Conjunctions, 62
- con*, 84a
- Dates, 96
- Day, time of, 94, 96
- Days, of the week, 96
- dal* (letter), 10, App. B
- Definite Article, 28, 108
  - State, 28
- Demonstratives, 37, 43
- Derived Verbs, 102
- Descriptive *ezafe*, 36
- Determinative Relative Clause, 80
- Diminutives, 99
- Diphthongs, 7, 12
- Direct Object, 54, 63
- Division, 93
- ain* (letter), 19, 26
- ezafe*, 36-40, 45, 58, 59, 61, 70, 72, 88, 90, 96, 100
- fatha*, 6, 32, 57, 108
  - Doubled, 57, 108
- fe* (letter), 20
- Feminine Ending, 57, 108
- Figures, 89
- Final Clauses, 82
- Formulae, Arabic, 104-6
- Fractions, 91
- Future Tense, 66, 68, 85
- gaf* (letter), 21, 34, 39
- Gender, 17
  - Arabic Feminine, 57, 108
- General State (noun), 28
- Glottal Stop, 26, 39
- hame*, 45
- har*, 45, 84
- harce*, 45, 84
- hamze*, 26, 28, 32, 39, 53, 103, 107
- ha*, 28
- he havveç*, 24, 34, 39, 41, 89
  - Dotted, 57, 108
- he hotti*, 8, 34, 89
- Hiatus, 39, 41, 53, 59, 99
- i* (Abstract Noun Suffix), 99
  - (Indefinite Suffix), 28, 36, 39, 54
  - (Personal Ending), 48
  - (Relative Suffix), 80, 81
  - (Relative Adjectival Suffix), 99
  - (Verbal Suffix), 76
- Imperative, 50, 52, 68
- Imperfect, 49, 68, 76, 85
- Impersonal Verbs, 76, 77
- in*, 43, 82, 83
- Indefinite Article, 28
  - Relative Conjunction, 84
  - State, 28
  - Suffix, 28, 36, 39, 54
- Indirect Object, 54
  - Statement, 78
- Infinitive, 47, 70, 75, 86, 102
  - Shortened, 66, 70, 76, 77
- Instrument, Nouns of, 105
- Interrogatives, 44
- Intonation Patterns, 18, 29, 39a, 45a, 54a, 63a, 73, 79a, 83a, 87a, 96a
- Intransitive Verbs, 72
- Irregular Forms (Arabic), 103, 107
- jazm*, 25, 32
- jim* (letter), 8, 34
- Jussive, 50, 68
- Juxtaposition (compound nouns), 100



- kasre*, 7, 32  
*kaf* (letter), 21, 34  
*ke*, 77, 78, 80-5  
  
*lam*, 22, 34, 108  
 Leap year, 96  
 Locative Clauses, 81  
     Sentences, 79  
 Logical Subject, 40, 87  
 Lunar Year, 96  
  
*madde*, 6, 32  
*magar*, 29, 59, 62, 82  
*mal*, 36  
*mi*-, 48, 52, 71  
*mim*, 23, 34  
 Months, 96  
 Multiplication, 93  
  
*na*-, 51, 52, 67  
*nastaʿliq*, 3, App. A, B  
*nass*, 3, App. A  
 Negative, 51, 52, 67  
 Nominal Suffixes, 39, 99  
 Nominative Case, 108  
 Nouns, 36, 55, 72, 99, 100  
     Abstract, 99  
     Compound, 37, 99, 100  
     of Instrument, 105  
     of Occupation, 99, 105  
     of Place, 99, 105  
     of Time, 105  
     Verbal, 99, 106  
 Noun Formulae (Arabic), 105  
 Number, 28  
 Numerals, 37, 45, 88, 99  
     Cardinal, 88  
     Ordinal, 90, 96  
 Numerators, 88  
 Numerical Expressions, 92  
*nun*, 5, 34  
  
 Object, 40  
     Direct, 54, 63  
     Indirect, 54  
 Occupation, Nouns of, 99, 105  
 Ordinal Numbers, 90, 96  
  
 Palatalization, 21  
     articles, 100  
     Arabic, 106  
     Past, 64, 66, 67, 70, 74  
 Partitive *ezafe*, 36  
 Passive, 66, 69  
 Past Participle, 64, 66, 67, 70, 74  
     Stem, 46, 49, 52, 64, 99, 100  
     Tense, 49, 52, 68, 85  
*pe* (letter), 5, 34  
 Percentages, 91  
 Perfect, 66, 68  
 Personal endings, 48, 52, 53  
     pronouns, 39, 40, 60, 72  
*piš*, 12, 32  
 Place, Nouns of, 99, 105  
 Pluperfect, 66, 68, 85  
 Plural, 28, 36  
     Broken, 28, 105  
     Sound, 28, 108  
     Suffixes, 28, 39  
 Possessive *ezafe*, 36  
 Possessor, 40  
 Predicate, 18, 40  
 Prefixes, 39, 97  
     Verbal, 39, 48, 53  
 Prepositions, 39, 55, 59, 73, 100  
     Compound, 60  
 Prepositional Adjectives, 61  
     Adverbs, 61  
     Conjunctions, 82  
     Expressions, 58  
 Present Indicative, 50, 52, 68, 75, 85  
     Stem, 46, 50, 99, 100, 102  
     Subjunctive, 50, 52, 68, 75, 76  
 Pronominal Adjectives, 99  
     Conjunctions, 83  
     Suffixes, 39, 40, 41, 60, 72  
 Pronouns, 18, 44, 80  
     Personal, 39, 40, 60, 72  
     of Quantity, 45  
     Reflexive, 42  
     Separate, 40, 60  
 Punctuation, 33  
  
*qaf* (letter), 20  
*qain* (letter), 19  
 Quantity, Adjectives of, 45, 56, 80, 88  
     Pronouns of, 45  
 Questions, 29

- ra*, 54, 58, 80  
*re* (letter), 11, 34, App. B  
 Reflexive Pronouns, 42  
 Relative Adjectives, 99  
     Clauses, 80  
     Suffixes, 80, 81  
  
*sad* (letter), 14  
 Scripts, 2, 3, 4, App. A, B  
*se* (letter), 5, 34  
 Selective Relative Clause, 80  
 Sentences, 18, 36, 38, 63  
     Causal, 79  
     Co-ordinate, 74  
     Locative, 79  
     Subordinate, 75  
     Temporal, 79  
     Verbal, 54  
 Separate Pronouns, 40, 60  
 Shortened Infinitive, 66, 70, 76, 77  
*sin* (letter), 13  
*sokun*, 25, 32  
 Solar Year, 96  
 Sound Plural, 28, 108  
 Statements, Indirect, 78  
 Stems (Verbal), 46, 99, 100  
     Past, 46, 49, 52, 64, 99, 100  
     Present, 46, 50, 52, 99, 100, 102  
 Stress, 9, 28, 63, 72  
 Subject, 18, 40, 54, 63  
     Logical, 40, 87  
 Subjunctive, 79, 84, 85  
     Perfect, 66, 68, 71  
     Present, 50, 52, 68, 71, 75, 76  
 Subordinate Sentences, 75  
 Subtraction, 93  
 Suffixes, 28, 39, 99  
     Adjectival, 39, 99  
     Indefinite, 28, 36, 39, 54  
     Nominal, 36, 99  
     Personal Endings, 48  
     Plural, 28, 39  
     Pronominal, 39, 40, 41, 60, 72  
     Relative, 80, 81  
     Verbal, 39, 76  
 Superlative, 39, 76  
 Superlative, 37, 38, 80, 90  
  
*šadde*, 25, 32  
*šekaste*, 3, App. B  
  
*šin* (letter), 13  
*šodan*, 66  
  
*tašād*, 25, 32, 108  
*ta* (letter), 15  
     (preposition, conjunction), 59, 82, 84a  
*te* (letter), 5, 34  
 Temporal Clauses, 80-2  
     Sentences, 79  
 Tenses, 52, 75, 78  
     Compound, 66  
     Indicative, 49, 50, 52, 66, 68, 75, 85  
     Past Stem, 49  
     Present Stem, 50  
     Subjunctive, 66, 68, 71, 75, 76, 85  
     Uses of, 68  
 Time, Nouns of, 105  
     of Day, 94, 96  
 Transitive Verbs, 72  
 Trilateral Root, 103  
  
*va*, 62  
*vav* (letter), 11, 12, 24, 27, 39, 103, 107.  
     App. B  
 Verbs, 18, 28, 36, 40, 44, 54, 63  
     Auxiliary, 65, 72  
     Causative, 102  
     Compound, 63, 72  
     Derived, 102  
     Impersonal, 76  
     Intransitive, 72  
     Transitive, 72  
 Verbal Formulae (Arabic), 106  
     Nouns, 99, 106  
     Prefixes, 39, 48, 52, 53  
     Sentences, 54  
     Stems, 46, 99, 100  
     Suffixes, 39, 76  
 Vowels, 1, 6, 7, 1, 2, 24, 31  
  
 Week, Days of the, 96  
 Writing Signs, 25, 32  
  
*ya*, 62  
*ye* (letter), 5, 7, 28, 34, 36, 39, 48, 53, 54,  
     57, 76, 80, 81, 99, 103, 107  
 Year, Leap, 96  
     Lunar, 96  
     Solar, 96  
*yek*, 28, 88, 91

*xa* (letter), 8, 27, 34

*xastan*, 65, 66

*xod*, 42, 54

*ṣabar*, 6

*ṣamme*, 12, 32

*ṣa* (letter), 15

*ṣad* (letter), 14

*ṣal* (letter), 10, App. B

*ṣain* (letter), 11, 34, App. B

*ṣir*, 7, 32

*ṣira*, 84a

*ṣe* (letter), 11, 34, App. B



## KEY

## Lesson 1

## Exercise A (p. 7)

twist	پیچ 2.	pocket	جیب 1.
here	اینجا 4.	gate	باب 3.
Haji	حاجی 6.	nose	بینی 5.
water	آب 8.	verse	بیت 7.
		see!	بین 9.

## Exercise B (p. 8)

this	ا + ی + ن 2.	there	ا + ن + ج + ا 1.
blue	ا + ب + ی 4.	papa	ا + ب + ا 3.
fever	ب + ت 6.	between	ن + ی + ب 5.
desert	ن + ا + ب + ی + ا 8.	see!	ن + ب + ی + ا 7.

## Exercise C (p. 8)

1. This pocket. 2. That desert. 3. With water. 4. Water or desert.  
5. Without life. 6. Without bread. 7. Body or soul. 8. Foot or nose.

## Lesson 2

## Exercise A (pp. 13-14)

1. The woman is beautiful. 2. The wind is swift. 3. This news is true. 4. No, it is not true. 5. The father is good. 6. That apple is sweet. 7. No, this apple is sour. 8. The door is green. 9. The night is cold. 10. The woman is ready. 11. The brother is young. 12. The master is pleased.

## Exercise B (p. 14)

1. دختر جوان است. 2. جواب صحیح نیست. 3. این سیب  
سرخ است. 4. آن پسر حسن است. 5. زر زرد است. 6. در باز است  
7. آن سیب ترش است. 8. حسین حاضر نیست. 9. این  
درس سخت است. 10. رضا راضی نیست. 11. پسر حاضر است  
12. خوب است.

**Lesson 3****Exercise A (pp. 26-7)**

1. This boy and that girl are good. 2. Isfahan is a city. 3. This house is large. 4. (The) spoon and fork and knife are ready. 5. Hosein is a boy and Parvin a girl. 6. Are not these conditions difficult? 7. Yes, these conditions are difficult. 8. The road is long. 9. This fatherland is dear. 10. Isn't there water here? 11. No, there is not water here. 12. This boy is tall and that girl short.

**Exercise B (p. 27)**

1. این کُتَب سَبز است. 2. خواب راحَت است. 3. ایران مَمِلَکَت است. 4. آن بَچَه کُوچِک است. 5. این کارد تیز است. 6. آن شُور بزرگ است. 7. نَقّاش حاضِر است. 8. سیب سُرخ است ولی دَرخت سَبز است. 9. آن کِتاب عَجیب و غَریب است. 10. مادر عَزیز است. 11. آیا آن خانه راحَت است؟ 12. این دَسُورات آسان است.

**Lesson 4****Exercise A (pp. 38-9)**

1. This house is very small, but it is beautiful. 2. This room is not very small. 3. This is the floor and that is the ceiling. 4. The floor is below and the ceiling above. 5. This wall is high. 6. Here there is [a] window and there [a] door. 7. Is there a garden there? 8. Yes, it is very near. 9. This garden is green. 10. This flower is red, but those flowers are yellow. 11. Water is necessary, but here it is bad. 12. This street is very wide, but that side-street is narrow. 13. Yes sir, the street is very beautiful. 14. This shop is very useful.

## Exercise B (p. 39)

1. آیا بازار دور است؟ 2. نَخیر آقا دور نیست نزدیک است
3. این بازار خیلی زیباست 4. اینجا میوه هست 5. آیا این میوه تازه است؟ 6. بلی آقا خیلی تازه است 7. مگر این گوشت خیلی گران نیست؟ 8. نَخیر خانم خیلی ارزان است 9. آیا اینجا بانگ هست؟ 10. بلی آقا هست؛ آنجاست 11. آیا رئیس حاضر است؟ 12. اینجا میز و صندلی و کاغذ و قلم و جوهر هست 13. آیا این عمارت پُستخانه است؟ 14. نَخیر آقا آنجاست ولی باز نیست

## Lesson 5

## Exercise A (pp. 51-2)

1. Is the office of Mr Mohammadi here? 2. Yes, sir, it is very near.
3. This newspaper is not Parviz's. 4. The newspapers of the city of Tehran are many. 5. The largest city in (of) Iran is Tehran, but Isfahan is more beautiful (than it). 6. Is there fresh meat? 7. Yes, madam, but this meat is better than that. 8. All the people are contented.
9. The happiest day of the Iranian year is the festival of the new year.
10. The smallest building in (of) this street is the shoemaker's shop.
11. This factory is the largest of the factories of Iran. 12. The majority of the people are workers or peasants.

## Exercise B (p. 52)

1. تمام بچه‌گان حاضر اند 2. موی سر آن دختر زرد است ولی مالِ این پسر سیاه 3. دستهای این بچه کثیف است 4. دستهای علی آرمال فریدون پاکتر است 5. حسن و حسین برادرانِ پروین اند 6. پروین دخترِ رئیسِ کارخانه است 7. آیا رضا از حسین کوچکتر است؟

8. نَخیر بزرگتر است. 9. این کار تقصیر آن پسر است. 10. خواهرِ هوشنگ دخترِست خوشگل. 11. آیا این عمارت منزلِ حسین است؟ 12. نَخیر مالِ هوشنگ است.

### Lesson 6

#### Exercise A (pp. 63-4)

1. Where is your house? 2. My house is just here. 3. Where is your home? 4. My home is Isfahan. 5. How is that city? 6. It is a very good city. 7. Aren't the mosques (of) there very small? 8. No, sir, there are several big mosques. 9. This letter is yours. 10. What news is there (it)? 11. It is good news. 12. There is no news better than this.

#### Exercise B (p. 64)

1. آن شخصِ غریب کیست؟ 2. اسمش معلوم نیست. 3. این کُتب مالِ کیست؟ 4. اینها مالِ حسن است، ولی آنها مالِ کسی دیگر است. 5. آیا پدرم خودش حاضر است؟ 6. کدام پسر جوانتر است؟ 7. هوشنگ از علی خیلی جوانتر است. 8. این چه کتاب است؟ 9. کتابِ تاریخ است. 10. هر زیستان برفِ زیاد هست. 11. اینجا چند خانه هست؟ 12. معلوم نیست، ولی خیلی هست.

### Lesson 7

#### Exercise A (p. 72)

The streets of Tehran have many shops. These shops sell all kinds of goods. My wife is buying [a] new dress. She is buying a white blouse and a green skirt. I want a new hat. I see one here. The neighbouring shop is a bookshop. The bookseller calls me. He says, 'Come [here], I have many new books.' He brings them all. I have not [got] the newest of them. I do not buy a new hat, I buy those [books].



## Exercise B (p. 72)

کِتَابِ خود را میخواندم. رِضَا دَرِّا زَد. دُوسَتِ خُود حَسَن را آوَرَد. چای و شیرینی خُورَدِیم. حَسَن خَبَرِ شَهر را گُفَت. حادِثُهُ دید. راننده غافلِی اُتُومبِلی می راند. اُتُومبِلی دِیگَری را زَد. پاسبانان آمَدند. گُفَتند تَقصیرِ شُوفِرِ اَوَّل است. او را گِرفَتند و بُرَدند. خِیابانهایِ تِهرَان بِسیارِ خَطَرناک است. خِیلی ماشین می آیند و می رَوَند.

## Lesson 8

## Exercise A (pp. 84-5)

One day Molla Nasroddin went to the confectioner; he very much wanted [some] sweets, but there wasn't a dinar in his pocket. Then he went inside the shop [and] ate (was eating) [some] sweets. The owner of the shop asked for money, [but] the molla didn't hear. The owner of the shop became angry [and] struck the molla several times with [a] stick. The molla went on (was always) eating sweets, and said, 'What a good city it is, and what kind people it has. They beat strangers with (the blow of) [a] stick and say, "Go on eating (lit. yet again eat) sweets".'

## Exercise B (p. 85)

ایران مَمْلَکَتی است بِسیارِ قَدِیم. مَرْدُمِ مُتَمَدَّن بیش از هَفَتِ هَزار سال پیش آنجا میزیستند. مُهمَتَرینِ مَرکَزِ تَمَدُّن شُوش بود. نَزْدِیکِ سِه هَزار سال پیش ایلاتِ آریائی از آسیایِ مَرکزی بایران آمَدند. ایشان اَجَدادِ ایرانیانِ اِمروز بودند. شَهرهایِ هَمَدان و تَخْتِ جَمشید را ساختند. در این دَوَره زَرْدُشتِ پَیغَمبَرِ دینِ جَدیدی آموخت. مَشهورترینِ پادشاهِ ایرانیان داریوشِ هَخامنشی بود. دَرِ اَوَاخِرِ قَرْنِ شِشُمِ قَبْل از میلاد تمامِ ایران و عِراق و سوریه و مِصر را گِرفت و لَشکَرهایِ خُود را بَهِندوستانِ فِرِستاد. بَعد از دُویست سال اِسکندرِ رومی لَشکَرهایِ ایران را شِکست، و آخِرینِ پادشاهِ خاندانِ هَخامنشی مُرد.

**Lesson 9****Exercise A (p. 98)**

The nation of Iran, on the evidence of history, has never been deprived of speed of movement. The royal roads of the Achaemenids were the first long roads of the civilised world. These roads joined Europe with Asia. But in general in former times travel between distant points of Iran for the generality of the people lasted for from one to two months. Today numerous roads have been built, and first-grade highways have penetrated the mountains. The most important of the new means of travel in present-day Iran is the Transiranian railway (line). Aerial travel is also possible in all points of the country.

**Exercise B (pp. 98-9)**

بعد از وفات اسکندر رومی امپراتوری او بهم خورد. در مرور زمان خاندان جدید ایرانی زمام امور مملکت را گرفت. این خاندان با اسم پارتها یا آشکانیان معلوم شد. پایتخت ایشان در شمال ایران بود. سالیان دراز بارومیان جنگ میکردند ولی هیچ یک از طرفین پیروزی قاطعی نیافت. روابط تجارتی و فرهنگی نیز بین دو امپراتوری در سلطنت پارتها زیاد بود. زندگی ایرانی خیلی زیر نفوذ فرهنگ یونانی شد. دین مسیحی در ایران اهمیت یافت و دین ایرانی میده در امپراتوری رومی شایع شد. نزدیک ششصد سال بعد از وفات اسکندر امپراتوری پارت را آردشیر پاکان یکی از سالاران جنوب ایران سرنگون کرد. خاندان ساسانی را تأسیس کرد و بار دیگر ایران را امپراتوری بزرگی کرد.

**Lesson 10****Exercise A (p. 109)***The climate of Iran*

Iran is situated in the northern temperate zone, and for this reason its climate is in general temperate; but because of the high and widespread

mountains, the extensive deserts, and the nearness of the seas, we see in it various kinds of temperate climate. On (in) the shores of the Caspian Sea (sea of Mazandaran) the climate is temperate, in the internal deserts hot and dry, in the mountainous areas cold, and on the southern shores (shores of the south) very hot. The rainiest place in (of) Iran is the shores of the Caspian Sea, and the driest district (of it) the salt desert of Lut.

### Exercise B (p. 109)

دَر تَارِيخِ ایرانِ آب و هَوایِ آن بسیار نَفوذ داشت. میگویند دَر دورۀ قبل از تاریخِ فَلَاتِ مرکزی دریایِ داخلی بزرگی بوده، و مَرْدُمِ اوّل در غارهایِ کوهستانها میزیستند (زندگی میکردند). رفته رفته دریا خُشک شد، و کِناره‌هایِ آن بَمَزارعِ حاصلخیزی می‌گشتند. ولی بمرورِ زمانِ زمینِ خُشکتر هَم شد، و هَم اَکُنون تا قُرُونِ وُسْطی قِسْمَتِ بزرگی از کِشورِ بیابان بود. در این نواحی زِراعتِ تَنها بِوَسِیلَهٗ آبیاری می‌توانست اجرا کرد، و آن هَنوز در زَمَانِ حَاضِرِ بزرگترین مُشکِلِ ایران است. طَرَح‌هایِ جَدید و مِهَمِ آبیاری را در طَرَفِ شَمالِ تِه‌ران و در نزدیکیِ اِصفهان و روی سَفیدرودِ گیلان و دَر جَایِ دیگرِ مَمْلَکت دارند اجرا می‌کنند.

### Lesson 11

#### Exercise A (p. 121)

#### *The Rescue of the Moon*

On a moonlit night the Molla looked into a well, and saw the reflection of the moon in the well. He thought that it would bring (have) spiritual reward to rescue the moon from the well. So he threw a hook into the well and spun it several times (turns). By chance the hook got caught on a big stone at the bottom of the well. The Molla tried very [hard] to pull it up, but it did not move from its place. He used more force (he forced more), the string broke, and the Molla fell on [his] back. He looked and saw the moon in the sky, and said: 'Never mind! I took a lot of trouble, [but] I achieved (reached) [my] intention, I rescued the moon.'

## Exercise B (p. 122)

با پیروزیِ آردشیرِ پاپکانِ دَوَرِهٴ جَدیدی در ایران شروع کرد. دینِ زردشتی بارِ دیگر بِرسمِ دینِ مَلّیِ ایران بَرقرار شد، و دولت و روحانیین صَمیمانه با هم کار می‌کردند. دَرنتیجه حُکومتِ مُمَرکزِ قَوی بَرقرار شد که احساساتِ وَطَن دوستی و مِلّت پَرستی را در بَینِ مردم تشویق کرد. مابین شَخصیت‌هایِ مشهورِ این دوره شاهپورِ اَوَّل بود که والیریانِ امپراتورِ رومی را تحقیر کرد، شاهپورِ بزرگ که هفتاد سال سلطنت کرده و امپراتوری را مُحکّم (کرد) و تَوَسّعه داد، نوشیروانِ عادل که حکومت را قُوّت داد و قوانین را تدوین کرد، و مانی پَیغمبر که دینی تأسّیس کرد که آنرا در خودِ ایران رَدّ کردند ولی در اروپا و آسیای مرکزی زیاد رواج یافت.

## Lesson 12

## Exercise A (p. 130)

*The New Year Festival*

Jamshid was one of the ancient kings in (of) the legends of Iran. They say that the weaving of cloth, the sewing of clothes, the planting of barley, and the building of houses from stone, plaster and mud, were taught to the people by Jamshid. On the day when Jamshid sat on the royal throne, the people all made merry (happiness), and named that day Nouruz, that is, the new day; and up to now the Persians keep (take) this day as a festival. Nouruz is the best day of the year for all the Iranians and especially for the children. On this day everyone wears new clothes, they go to see one another, they make merry, and the grown-ups give New Year gifts to the children or buy them toys.

## Exercise B (p. 130)

امپراتوریِ ساسانی هَنوز ظاهراً در اَوّجِ قَدَرِ خود بوده است که ناگاه تَحَتِ حملهٴ عَرَب، که در نیمهٴ اَوَّلِ قَرْنِ هفتمِ میلادی زیرِ نفوذِ دینِ جدیدِ خودِ اسلام

از حدودِ عربستان بیرون ریختند، مغلوب گشت. در ظرفِ مدتِ کوتاهی زندگی فرهنگی ایران زیر سطحی آزدین و زبان و حکومتِ عربی غرق شد، اگرچه در واقع عقایدِ ایرانی دائماً در ترقی فرهنگِ عربی و اسلامی نفوذِ زیاد نمود. در ظرفِ دو قرن تمام ایران تحت حکومتِ خلفایِ عرب بود، که پایتختِ ایشان اولاً در عربستان بود، سپس در سوریه، و آخر در عراق. در این مدتِ اسلام با عقایدِ ساده و عوامِ پسندِ خود نزدیک شد دینِ قدیمِ زردشتی را محو کند.

### Lesson 13

#### Exercise A (pp. 141-2)

On (the day of) Tuesday, Mordad 14, 1337, the splendid new airport at Mehrabad was opened by the blessed hand of His August Imperial Majesty. The construction of this building, which of its kind is exceptional throughout the world, is [to be] reckoned as a very important and useful step from the aspect of the preservation of the good name (qualities) of the country in the sight of foreigners, who will travel regularly through this airport. The existence of an airport equipped with the complete technical apparatus appropriate to the great aeronautical progress of today will ensure (be the cause that) the great aeronautical companies of the world will try to include (establish) such an airport in their flight schedules (route of flying lines), and it is natural that from this aspect, firstly, great profits will accrue to the country, and secondly, it will be effective in making known the civilisation of the country in a worthy way to the people of the world.

#### Exercise B (p. 142)

در ظرفِ قرونِ دوم و سومِ هجری خاندانهایِ مستقلّ شروع کردند در ایران ظهور یابند. مابینِ مشهورترینِ آنها آلِ سامان در خراسان و ماورای النهر، و آلِ بویه در ایرانِ مرکزی و جنوبی بودند. شعرایِ ایرانیِ مشهور مثلِ

رودکی و فردوسی در این دوره شهرت یافتند. در اواخر قرن چهارم هجری سلطان نیرومند محمود غزنه در شرق سلطنت میکرد، و در اواسط قرن پنجم تمام مملکت را سلجوقیان آسیای مرکزی اشغال کردند. در دوره پانصد ساله بعد همان رشته حوادث تکرار میشود، ظهور خاندانهای مستقل کوچک توسط حملات مصیبت آوری قطع میشود، که ما بین آنها باید حمله مغول قرن هفتم و حمله تیمور لنگ قرن هشتم را ذکر کرد. باوجود این، در این زمان بود که عالیت‌ترین شاهکارهای ایران در ادبیات و صنایع ظریفه بروز شد. ولی تنها در اوایل قرن دهم هجری خاندان ایرانی حقیقی بار دیگر بر تمام کشور حکومت کرد.

#### Lesson 14

##### Exercise A (p. 154)

The star Sirius was the angel of rain. When Hormozd had finished creating the earth, he appointed the star Sirius to irrigate the world, so that rain should rain from the clouds and should soak the earth, and should make the Aryan lands green and cultivated. The bad-natured Ahriman, who was the enemy of goodness and cultivation, became angry when he saw the goodness of Hormozd's earth. He appointed Apush, the demon of dryness, to blow a hot wind and dry up the lands. Then the star Sirius rose, and rose up to the help of Hormozd. First she turned herself into (produced herself in the form of) a fifteen-year-old youth, and for a period of ten days and nights flew in the sky, and rain rained from the clouds. Then she turned herself into a golden-horned bull, and flew in the sky for ten days and nights, and rain rained from the clouds. The third time she turned herself into a white horse and flew in the sky for ten days and nights, and rain rained from the clouds. The drops of rain were each as large as a cup. The water rose as high as a man, and enveloped the earth from end to end (the end-to-end of the earth). The harmful animals were all destroyed and went down into holes in the ground.

## Exercise B (pp. 154-5)

خاندانِ صفوی را شاه اسماعیل، که در ۹۰۷ ه. ق. بر تختِ شاهی نشست، تأسیس کرد. او و جانشینانِ او ایران را یک امپراتوری متحد کرده و مذهبِ شیعی اسلام را دینِ ملی ایران قرار داد، و بدین وسیله آن وحدتِ دین و دولتی را که هزار سال پیش در ایامِ ساسانیان وجود داشت قرار گذاشت. سلطنتِ صفویان در زمانِ شاه عباس بزرگترین رونقِ نایل شد، او معاصرِ ملکه الیزابتِ انگلستان و اکبرِ امپراتورِ مغول و سلطانِ سلیمان عثمانی بود. پایتختِ اصفهان و شهرهایِ دیگر را بمساجد و کاخهایِ زیبا آرایش، و ادبیات و صنایعِ ظریفه را تشویق، و روابطِ دوستانه با ممالکِ بزرگِ آسیا و اروپا را ایجاد نمودند. خاندانِ صفوی در اواسطِ قرنِ دوازدهم هجری بهم خورد، و بعد از مدتی اغتشاش و حملاتِ افغان تخت را نادر شاه تصرف کرد، که در یک مدتِ کوتاه رونقِ امپراتوریِ ایران را از قفقاز تا برودِ سند توسعه داد. بعد از وفاتِ او امپراتوریِ بارِ دیگر بهم خورد، اگرچه مدتِ سی سالِ قسمتِ بزرگی از کشور را کریم خانِ زند از شیراز حکومت کرد. در اوایلِ قرنِ سیزدهم هجری مطابقِ قرنِ نوزدهم میلادی سالارِ قاجار آقا محمد رُقبایِ خود را شکسته و پایتختِ خود را در تهران گذاشت.

## Lesson 15

## Exercise A (p. 167)

Until recently (these last parts) the theatre did not exist in Iran, and the play in the present-day meaning of the word was unknown to the Iranians. From the beginning of the twentieth century the Iranians gradually began to translate the plays of the writers of the west; but these works were more suitable for reading, and plays were not produced

(arranged) in connection with them. Gradually small groups of players were formed and acted some (a portion) of these (same) plays, and gradually a taste for the watching of plays was created among the people. Today, apart from a large number of big cinemas which are in operation with modern facilities in Tehran and other cities, groups of players have been formed in Tehran and other places, and in the capital a special academy for the training of actors has been founded. From another aspect (side) it is several years since the High Academy of Music was founded, and is training the necessary players, singers and musicians under the supervision of European or Iranian masters.

#### Exercise B (p. 168)

اگرچه در قرنِ نوزدهم میلادی ایران قسمتِ بزرگی از سرزمینِ خود را بِروسیه و آفغانِستان و دولتِ عثمانی آزدست داد، از نقطهٔ نظرِ دیگری دورهٔ ثبات و استحکام بود. آزهمه بالاتر این دوره نفوذِ عقاید و آسالیبِ فنیِ غربی را مشاهده میکرد. مُحصلینِ زیاد برای تعلیم و تربیت شروعِ بِسافرتِ در اروپا کردند، و در عینِ حال امتیازاتِ مُتعددی برایِ اِکتشاف و اِستِمارِ منابعِ طبیعیِ ایران بِشرکتهای اروپائی واگذار شد. برخوردِ این حوادثِ باجتماعِ ایرانی مُنجرِ بِتقاضائی از طرفِ مردم شد، یعنی سهمِ بیشتری از حکومتِ کشور، که این تقاضا در ۱۲۳۴ هجری قمری بِاعطایِ مشروطه خاتمه یافت. در سالهای بعد از جنگِ جهانیِ اولِ خاندانِ قاجار را رضاخان معزول کرد، که بِرسمِ نخستین شاهِ خاندانِ پهلوی تاج را بر سرِ خود گذارد، و برنامهٔ شدیدِ اصلاح و تَجَدُّد را افتتاح نمود. حملهٔ انگلیسی و روسی سالِ ۱۳۲۰ هجری شمسی در زمانِ جنگِ جهانیِ دوم استغفایِ اورا تحمیل نمود، ولی بِررویِ آسای که گذارد، تشکیلِ صلح امیزِ دموکراسیِ مشروطه تحتِ هدایتِ پسرشان محمد رضا شاه و میسر شد.





# ELEMENTARY PERSIAN GRAMMAR

By L. P. ELWELL-SUTTON

Mr Elwell-Sutton's book provides a simple grammatical framework for contemporary written Persian. It is based on the characteristic idiom and phraseology of the language as it is used in newspapers, magazines and novels.

The student is introduced to Persian script from the first lesson. Words are fully vocalized in the early lessons, but vowels are progressively discarded; they are, however, shown in the vocabulary. The letter-forms of printed Persian are used in the exercises; but two appendices give examples of commonly used cursive scripts.

Although the structure of the language is Mr Elwell-Sutton's immediate concern, he has given close attention to the need for acquiring a workable vocabulary. The examples and exercises thus require only a limited vocabulary of words in fairly common use – about 1500 in all. The student is also given help with pronunciation; at the ends of lessons sample sentences from the exercises are printed with diacritics showing the intonation and stress of each syllable. At the end of the book there is a key to the lessons.

**CAMBRIDGE**  
UNIVERSITY PRESS



ISBN 0-521-09206-X



GO 0292

9 780521 092067